

THE VOICE OF HAN

漢之聲

An Educational Journal in Chinese Studies and International Relations

中國研究和國際關係的教育雜誌由海鴻基金會出版

Spring 2015 2015年春季

Volume 6 第六冊



2014 G20 summit was held in Brisbane, Australia in Dec. 2014年12月二十國領袖群峰會于澳大利亞舉行

- Great South African Anti-apartheid President Nelson Mandela, Terrorist Issues in Xinjiang and Venerable Master Tsu-Yun's Proper Drama for Cultivating World Humans' Minds
偉大南非反種族分離總統曼達拉, 新疆暴恐問題暨虛雲大師的佛法真諦可教化世界人心
- Synopsis of Global Climate Change 全球氣候變化概要
- The 6th BRICS Summit in Brazil and President Xi Jinping's Visit to Latin America in 2014
2014年金磚五國第六次高峰會議于巴西與習近平主席拉丁美洲之行



APEC 2014 in Beijing, China

2014 年北京亞太經合峰會

Hai Hung Foundation
P. O. Box 3864
Fredericksburg, VA 22402
U. S. A.

Postage

To:

This new millennium has just barely begun; yet, sadly to say it may go down in history as the millennium of terrorism as four US airplanes had been hijacked and crashed by terrorists killing about 3,000 people on 11 September 2001. A list of terroristic incidents which occurred in 2014 alone is well documented in the following website: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/list_of_terrorist_incident_2014. It is terrifying to recognize the act that terroristic violence occurred almost every day throughout the world in 2014. Moreover, on January 7-9, 2015, deadly terroristic attacks targeted the office of the satirical magazine *Charlie Hebdo* and a kosher grocery store in Paris killing 16 people. We mourn the loss of all innocent victims with a heavy heart, and pay our deepest condolence to their families and friends.

這新千紀元剛開始，2001年9月11日美國四架飛機被暴恐份子劫持與撞毀導致約三千人喪生，這是一個暴恐襲擊的新千紀元。2014年暴恐襲擊案件表全列於維基百科網站，全世界幾乎每一天都有暴恐案發生，這實在令人毛骨悚然。更而甚之，2015年1月7-9日暴恐襲擊巴黎一查理諷刺雜誌社辦公室及一超級市場導致16人喪生。我們沉重哀悼所有的無辜受害者及對其家屬與朋友們表達最誠摯的憐憫與慰問之意。

The G20 2014 summit was held in Brisbane, Australia, in December, with jobs and economic growth at the forefront of the G20 leaders' concerns. The main objectives of the summit were to "provide strategic priority for growth, financial rebalancing and emerging economies, investment and infrastructure, and employment and labor mobility." Earlier, the APEC 2014 summit with leaders from 21 countries convened in Beijing, China, in November. The theme of the conference was: "Shaping the Future through Asia-Pacific Partnership" which emphasized the following three key areas: (1) Advancing regional economic integration; (2) Promoting innovative development, economic reform and growth; (3) Strengthening comprehensive connectivity and infrastructure development.

2014年12月20國領袖群高峰會議于澳大利亞，布理斯巴尼舉行，就業與經濟成長是20國領袖群首先關心的；峰會的目標是「提供經濟成長戰略，財政平衡及合併經濟，投資與基礎建設，僱用與勞工移動。」稍早2014年11月亞太經濟合作高峰會議21位國家元首聚集於中國北京舉行，其主題「經由亞洲-太平洋夥伴合作化改變未來」的內容包括：1. 推進區域經濟整體性；2. 提昇改革進展，經濟改革與成長；3. 加強全面聯合性與基礎建設的進展。

Former South African President Nelson Mandela (1918-2013), the first Black president of South Africa, passed away on 5 December 2013. He was a freedom fighter and South Africa's symbol of the struggle against racial oppression. Earlier, the former Prime Minister of the United Kingdom, Mrs. Margaret Thatcher (1925-2013) passed away on 8 April 2013. She was the longest-serving British Prime Minister of the 20th century and is the only woman to have held that office. A Soviet journalist called her the "Iron Lady," a nickname that became associated with her uncompromising politics and leadership style. We pay our highest tributes and salutes to both outstanding leaders for their great and exceptional contributions to their countries in particular and to the world in general.

前南非總統曼達拉是南非第一位黑人民選總統於2013年12月5日逝世，他是自由鬥士與南非反對種族欺壓的代表。稍早前英國首相柴契爾夫人於2013年4月8日與世長辭，她是20世紀任期最長及唯一的女首相，一蘇俄雜誌者稱她是「鐵娘子」此名號與她不妥協政治領袖型式聯合一起。我們向這兩位傑出領袖為其國家與世界所作偉大卓越貢獻致最崇高的敬禮。

The Voice of Han

Volume 6, Spring 2015

Publisher: Hai Hung Foundation

Web Site: <http://haihungfound.org>

E-mail: webmaster@haihungfound.org

President: Sing Ging

Editorial Board: Soon Leong, Edward Chang, Xin Hua

Margaret Mi, Shin Chang, Chin Jen, Hongbo Tang

Information Technology: Sue Cheng

Cover and Photo Design: George Meadows

Mailing Address: Hai Hung Foundation, P. O. Box 3864

Fredericksburg, VA 22402, U. S. A.

漢之聲

第六冊, 2015 年春季

出版所: 海鴻基金會

網站

電腦地址

會長: 信淨

編輯委員會: 梁蓀河, 張暢繁, 欣華

瑪格特宓, 張馨, 親珍, 唐洪波

資訊技術: 鄭淑媛

封面與圖片設計: 喬治馬賓斯

通訊地址

The Voice of Han is an educational journal in Chinese studies and international relations published by the Hai Hung Foundation. Hai Hung Foundation is a non-profit organization established in Virginia, U. S. A. in 2000. The objectives of the foundation are: 1. to award scholarships for university or college students in financial need in Virginia, U. S. A. and Guangdong province, China; 2. to publish “The Voice of Han.”

「漢之聲」是一份致力於中國研究與國際關係的教育雜誌，由海鴻基金會出版。海鴻基金會是一非營利組織，於 2000 年成立於美國維吉尼亞州。其目標一：美國維吉尼亞州及中國廣東省大學清寒獎學金；目標二：出版「漢之聲」。

Submissions: *The Voice of Han* (bilingual, English and Chinese) welcomes the submissions of articles from experts and scholars in Politics, Economics, Science, Engineering, Education, Literature, Philosophy, History, Culture, Religion, etc. Although we are more interested in Chinese studies and international relations, an excellent article in any area involving any country will be published. One volume of the journal is published every three years. Articles should normally not exceed 30 pages (including English and Chinese). Please send your articles or letters to: webmaster@haihungfound.org

投稿: 「漢之聲」(英文與中文雙語雜誌)歡迎專家學者投稿於政治、經濟、科學、工程、文學、哲學、歷史、文化、宗教等。雖然我們對中國研究與國際關係較感興趣，但若一篇關於任何課題涉及任一國家的佳作將會被出版。這雜誌每三年出版一冊，一篇文章最長 30 頁(包括中英文)。請將您的文章或信件寄至: webmaster@haihungfound.org，您若只能用一種語言撰寫文章，編輯委員會將幫助您翻譯成另一語言。

Copyright: Hai Hung Foundation. All rights reserved. 版權所有

Table of Contents

1 Editor's Remarks

POLITICS AND SOCIOLOGY

- 4 Great South African Anti-apartheid President Nelson Mandela, Xinjiang's Terrorist Issues and Ven. Master Tsu Yun's Proper Dharma for Cultivating World Humans' Minds - *Tian Qu*
- 32 Synopsis of Global Climate Change - *Qingquan*
- 42 The 6th BRICS Summit in Brazil and President Xi Jinping's Visit to Latin America in 2014 - *Yen Jin*
- 49 APEC Beijing and CICA Shanghai in 2014 - *Hope*
- 57 Water Diversion from South to North in China - *Yio Ju*
- 68 Owner of Diaoyu Island Has Appeared - *Internet*
- 72 The Tokyo Japanese War Criminal Trial - A Terse Summary - *S. H. Leong*
- 76 Dilemmas of China's Modernization: Population Problem & Strategy of Sustainable Development - *H. Tang*

SCIENCE AND EDUCATION

- 86 ICM 2014 in Seoul and a Research Book Published In Europe - *Yuan*
- 94 Rosalind Franklin's Legacy - *Winston Chow*
- 96 Research Universities in China: Basic Concepts, Characteristics and Strategic Policies - *Hongyi Zhao*

HISTORY AND LITERATURE

- 105 The Black and White Faces of the Emperor Yong-Zheng - *S. H. Leong*
- 116 Translation of the Song of the Pipa by Bai Juyi - *E. C. Chang*
- 122 Feng Zong-Pu. *The Everlasting Rock* - Reviewed by *Constance F. Smith*
- 127 A Verse on 2015 Chinese Luna New Year Eve - *Chang*

RELIGION

- 128 Patriarchs of Buddhism (5)-instructed by *Hsuan Hwa*
- 130 Elder Master Hsu Yun's Self-Description of His Time and Instructions (6)-*Ze Shei Lu*
- 133 In Commemoration of 20th Anniversary of the Nirvana of Ven. Master Hsuan Hua - *Chin Jen*

SCHOLARSHIPS

- 142 The Scholarships of Hai Hung Foundation

目錄

編者的話

政治與社會

- 偉大南非反種族分離總統曼達拉, 新疆暴恐問題, 暨虛雲大師的佛法真諦可教化世界人心 - *天衢*
- 全球氣候變化概要 - *清泉*
- 2014 年金磚五國第六次高峰會議於巴西與習近平主席拉丁美洲之行 - *嚴淨*
- 2014 年北京亞太經合峰會與上海亞信峰會 - *厚朴*
- 中國南水北調介紹 - *攸居*
- 釣魚島的島主出現了 - *網路*
- 東京日本戰犯審判簡介 - *梁蓀河*
- 中国现代化的困境: 人口问题和可持续发展战略 - *唐洪波*

科學與教育

- 2014 年國際數學家國會于漢城及一本研究書籍出版于歐洲 - *圓羅莎琳德·富蘭克林的遺跡* - *周棋*
- 研究型大學的基本概念特征及其建設對策 (2) - *趙弘毅*

歷史與文學

- 雍正皇帝的黑白兩面 - *梁蓀河*
- 英議白居易作「琵琶行」 - *張暢繁*
- 馮宗璞小說《三生石》 - *Constance F. Smith* 評論
- 乙未大年夜有感 - *親昌*

宗教

- 佛祖道影(5) - *宣化上人* 講述
- 虛雲老和尚自述年譜暨開示(6) - *岑學呂*
- 上宣下化老和尚涅槃二十周年紀念 - *親珍*

獎學金

- 海鴻基金會獎學金

**Great South African Anti-apartheid President
Nelson Mandela, Xinjiang's Terrorist Issues and
Venerable Master Tsu Yun's Proper Dharma
for Cultivating World Humans' Minds**

偉大南非反種族分離總統曼達拉，
新疆暴恐問題暨虛雲大師的
佛法真諦可教化世界人心

Tian Qu

天衢

© The Nobel Peace Prize 1993 was awarded jointly to Nelson Mandela and Frederik Willem de Klerk *"for their work for the peaceful termination of the apartheid regime, and for laying the foundations for a new democratic South Africa."*

1993年諾貝爾和平獎被頒贈給曼達拉與客拉克兩位南非總統「因為他們和平終結種族分離的功績且給予新民主南非奠定了基礎。」

© Eighth Patriarch of the Weiyang Sect Hsu-Yun's (45th Patriarch of Buddhism) 56-character verse for the transmission:

馮仰宗第八代祖(佛45祖)
虛雲德清演派五十六字：

*The Virtue of words proclaims in profusion and the Way greatly prospers.
The morality tripod's fragrance permeates with five shares renewed.
The wisdom flames fully pervade, enveloping worlds as many as sands.
The incense cloud everywhere masks the splendor of old and new.
Kindness and pity deliver the world with vows which have no end.
The light excels the sun and moon, bright and totally clear.
He revived the sect and held the flower to propagate the Wei.
The perfect mark of the mind-lamp is eternally glorious and bright.*

詞德宣衍道大興，戒鼎馨遍五分新；慧燄彌布周沙界，香雲普蔭燦古今。
慈悲濟世願無盡，光超日月朗太清；振啟拈花宏馮上，圓相心燈永昌明。

Introduction

介紹

Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela (1918-2013) was a South African anti-apartheid revolutionary, politician and philanthropist who served as President of South Africa from 1994 to 1999. He was South Africa's first black elected president in a fully representative democratic election. His government concentrated on dismantling the legacy of apartheid through tackling racism, poverty and equality, and fostering racial reconciliation. He served as President of the African National Congress (ANC) from 1991 to 1997. Internationally, Mandela was Secretary General of the Non-Aligned Movement from 1998 to 1999. He gained international recognition and fame for his activism, and received more than 250 honors, including the Nobel Peace Prize, the US Presidential Medal of Freedom, the Soviet Order of Lenin and Bharat Ratna. **Nelson Mandela**

is held deep respect within South Africa as the “Father of the Nation,” where he is known under his Xhosa clan name of Madiba.

奈爾孫·曼達拉是南非反種族分離的革命家，政治家與慈善家，他曾於 1994-1999 年擔任南非總統，他是南非第一位黑人民選總統。他的政府與內閣專住在反種族分離，反貧窮，支持平等及種族團結。他於 1991-1997 年擔任非洲國會會長。國際上，他擔任反種族分離運動秘書長，由於他的種種壯舉，國際聲名大噪。他曾先後獲得 250 多種獎章 包括 1993 諾貝爾和平獎，美國總統自由勳章，蘇俄列寧及巴若弱那獎章。**曼達拉深受南非人民們的尊敬與愛戴而且他被尊稱為「南非國父」。**

Overall, there were about 10 terrorist incidents occurred in China in 2013, 9 in Xinjiang and 1 in Beijing. On 1 March 2014, there was a terrified terrorist attack occurred in Kunming, Yunnan, China. In the front of train station in Kunming, there were 11 terrorists wearing uniforms and holding knives to hack people such that 29 civilians were killed and 143 were injured, which caused a horrified tragedy. This incident was planed and implemented by an extreme group of people in Xinjiang for separation. On 30 April 2014, there was another terrorist attack at railroad station in Urumqi, which killed 3 people and injured 79 citizens. Moreover, on 22 May 2014, there was a suicide bombing occurred in a morning market in Urumqi, which killed 43 killed and injured 94. On July 28, 2014, there was another terrorist attack in Shacha county in Xinjiang, which killed 37 citizens, and 59 terrorists were shot dead by police for protecting people. In this millennium, there are many terrorist attacks throughout the world. No matter which government in which country in the world proposes which method to prevent any terrorism, it only takes a stopgap measure temporarily, but not a cured measure permanently.

中国於 2013 年至少披露 10 庄暴恐事件，其中 9 庄发生在新疆，1 庄发生在北京。2014 年 3 月 1 日中國雲南省昆明發生蒙面暴力恐怖事件，11 名統一著裝蒙面持刀，在中國雲南省昆明火車站廣場售票處，砍殺無辜群眾，造成 29 人死亡 143 人受傷。根據調查这是一庄由新疆分裂势力一手策划组织的严重暴力恐怖事件。2014 年 4 月 30 日於新疆乌鲁木齐火车南站站外发生爆炸案，死亡 3 人、伤 79。緊接著 2014 年 5 月 22 日於[乌鲁木齐市沙依巴克区人民公园](#)西側的公园北街早市发生的严重暴力恐怖案件，此事件造成 43 人死，9 人受伤。2014 年 7 月 28 日於新疆莎車縣暴恐案導致 37 民眾受害，59 名暴徒被擊斃。從這世紀以來，暴恐襲擊橫行，無論任何國家任何政府採取任何控制暴恐襲擊的措施，只是短暫治標而無法永久徹底治本。

Nowadays, the world is in chaos. There are a multitude of issues such as terrorist attacks, natural and man-made calamities, global climate change, environmental pollution, human hunger, morality fading, etc., and the earth and people are gradually sick. It takes about ten years to produce a flourishing forest, but it takes a hundred years to generate a well-behaved generation of humans in the world. Chinese superior culture and history of five thousand years are like horses running millions of miles in length and breath. **Confucianism, Buddhism and Taoism**, the three main branches of philosophy, fall into hundreds of discourses. The preliminary rudiment of remedy is the philosophy of **Confucius and Tao**, which could educate people, families, countries and the world. The ultimate rudiment of remedy is the **proper drama of Buddhism**, originated from **Buddha Shakyamuni** (464-385 B.C), up to recent **Venerable**

Master Hsu Yun (1840-1959), which could cultivate all humans' minds and prevent terrorism in the world, save the earth, and keep all people in peace and prosperity.

當今世界混亂，暴恐襲擊，天災人禍，全球氣候變化，環境污染，道德淪喪，五濁惡世，整個地球與人類已經開始生病。十年樹木百年樹人，中國優良文化「上下五千年縱橫千萬里，經綸儒釋道三家出入百家言」。初期治本的方法有孔孟老莊思想，可修身齊家治國平天下；最高治本的方法唯有釋迦牟尼佛到達摩祖師東傳衣鉢至六祖惠能大師，再傳正法至近代虛雲高僧的大乘佛法真諦，可教化世界人心，防止暴恐與徹底拯救全人類。

Not only the extreme people in Xinjiang for separation should learn a great lesson from Nelson Mandela, a socialist, for anti-apartheid, but Chinese government also should learn how he established a new democratic South Africa. This article includes four parts: 1) biographical sketch of Nelson Mandela, 2) Xinjiang's terrorist issues, 3) Venerable Master Tsu-Yuns' proper drama for cultivating world humans' minds, 4) conclusion.

不僅新疆主張分離主義的人們應該學習曼達拉總統反對種族分離的偉大課訓，中國政府也應該學習社會主義者曼達拉總統如何締造「新民主南非」。這篇文章包括四部分：1) 奈爾孫·曼達拉總統簡介，2) 新疆暴恐問題，3) 虛雲高僧的大乘佛法真諦可教化世界人心，4) 結論。

1. Biographical Sketch of President Nelson Mandela 1. 奈爾孫·曼達拉總統簡介



Nelson Mandela (1918-2013)

Early Life Nelson was born on 18 July 1918 in the village of Mvezo in Umtatu, a part of South Africa's Cape Province. Given the forename Rolihlahla, a Xhosa term colloquially meaning "troublemaker," in later years, he became known by his clan name, Madiba. His great-grandfather, Naubengcuka, was the ruler of the Thembu people in the Transkeian Territories of

South Africa's modern Eastern Cape Province. One of this king's sons, named Mandela, became Nelson's grandfather and the source of his surname. His father, Gadla Henry Mphakanyiswa, was a local chief and councilor to the monarch; he had been appointed to the position in 1915, after his predecessor was accused of corruption by a governing white magistrate. In 1926, Gadla was sacked for corruption, but Nelson would be told that he lost his job for speaking up to the magistrate's unreasonable demands. Gadla had four wives, four sons and nine daughters, who lived in different villages. Nelson's mother was Gadla's third wife, Nosekeni Fanny, was a daughter of Nkedama of the Right Hand House and a member of the amaMpemvu clan of Xhosa.

早期生活 曼達拉於 1918 年 7 月 18 日出生於南非開普省的一小鎮。他被給一小名意思是「麻煩製造者」。後來他被名為「馬地把」，他的曾祖父是南非開普省潭布族的總管，奈爾孫的祖父是國王兒子群之一，此為他家姓的來源。自從 1915 年以來，因前任長官貪污，他的父親哥大擔任地方教堂總管。1926 年哥大因為貪污被辭職，曼達拉被告他對長官無禮說詞而失去職務。哥大有四個妻子四個兒子及九個女兒，他們居住在不同村莊，曼達拉的母親是哥大第三個妻子梘絲客妮是右國會議員，也是搜沙族的成員之一。

Mandela's early life was dominated by "custom, ritual and taboo." He grew up with two sisters in his mother's kraal in the village of Qunu, where he tended herds as a cattle-boy, spending much time outside with other boys. Both his parents were illiterate, but being a devout Christian. His mother sent him to a local Methodist school when he was seven. Baptized a Methodist, Mandela has given the English forename of "Nelson" by his teacher. When Mandela was about nine, his father came to stay at Qunu, where he died of an undiagnosed ailment which Mandela believed to be lung disease. He asserted that he inherited his father's "proud rebelliousness" and "stubborn sense of fairness."

曼達拉的早期生活被「傳統宗教、儀式、戒律」所控制。他與其兩個姊姊在他母親庫奴村莊長大，他當看牛童和其他男童一起玩耍，他的父母都不識字但是虔誠基督徒，當他七歲時，他的母親送他到教堂接受洗禮，他被老師取名奈爾孫，當他九歲時，他父親到庫奴村莊居住而得了不可醫治的病，曼達拉認為是肺病，他說他遺傳了他父親的「驕傲的反叛」與「毅然的公平」。

His mother took Mandela to a great palace at Mqhkezweni, where he was entrusted under the guardianship of Themby regent, Chief Jongintaba Dalindyebo. Raised by Jongintaba and his wife Noemgland alongside their son Justice and daughter Nomafu, Mandela felt that they treated him as their son, but would not see his mother for many years. As Mandela attended church services every Sunday with his guardians, Christianity became a significant part of his life. He attended a Methodist mission school located next to the palace, studying English, Xhosa, history and geography. He developed a love of African history, listening to the tales told by elderly visitors to the palace, and becoming influenced by the anti-imperialist rhetoric of Chief Joy; he nevertheless considered the European colonialists as benefactors, not oppressors. Aged 16, he, Justice and several other boys traveled to Tyhalarha to undergo the circumcision ritual that symbolically marked their transition from boys to men; the rite over, he was given the name "Dalibunga."

曼達拉的母親帶他到馬克溫妮宮殿，他在壇貝的中極衲巴攝政王的監護下，被攝政王與其妻子與其兒子與女兒一起撫養長大，曼達拉感覺他們視他如同親子，但他多年未見母親。曼達拉每星期日與其監護家庭上教堂作禮拜，耶穌基督成為他生命重要的一部分。他參加傳教學校學習英文歷史地理等。他聆聽年長的故事啟發了他熱愛非洲的歷史，被反皇族領導舊的影響，他認為歐洲殖民主義者是利益者而非侵略者。他 16 歲時與加斯地司及幾個男孩旅行到泰哈搭哈參加儀式表示，他已經從少男轉變成年並給予答力蹦加的名字。

Mandela attended his secondary school at Clarkebury Boarding Institute in Engcobo, a Western style institution that was the largest school for black Africans in Thembuland, he intended to learn skills needed to become a private councilor for the Thembu royal house. Completing his junior certificate in two years in 1937, he moved to Healdtown, the Methodist College in Fort Beaufort attended by most Thembu royalty, including Justice. The headmaster emphasized the superiority of English culture and government, but Mandela became increasingly interested in native African culture, making his first non-Xhosa who broke taboo by marrying a Sotho. Spending much of his spare time long-distance running and boxing, in his second year became a perfect.

曼達拉在英科玻上西式初中，此校是給非洲黑人們最大的教育學校，他學習了成為談部皇家的私立協調者的技能。兩年內於 1937 年完成了初級證書，他搬到海德城的基督教學院，大部分給談部皇家子弟們學習包括加斯地司。校長著重英語文化與政府教育，但曼達拉很快對本國非洲文化感興趣，他打破禁忌娶叟投。他花很多時間跑步與拳擊，他第二年取得全優。

Adult With Jongintaba's backing, Mandela began work on a Bachelor of Arts degree at the Fort Hare University, an elite black institution in Alice, Eastern Cape, with around 150 students. There he studied English, anthropology, politics, native administration, and Roman Dutch law in his first year, desiring to become an interpreter or clerk in the Native Affairs Department. He stayed in the Wesley House dormitory, befriending his own kinsman, K. D. Matanzima and Oliver Tambo, who became a close friend and comrade for decades to come. Although having friends connected to the African National Congress (ANC) and the anti-imperialist movement who wanted an independent South Africa. Mandela avoided any involvement, and became a vocal supporter of the British war effort during the Second World War. Helping found a first-year students' house committee which challenged the dominance of the second year, at the end of his first year he became involved in a Students' Representative Council (SRC) boycott against the quality of food, for which he was temporarily suspended from the university, he left without receiving a degree.

成年 曼達拉和中極衲巴回來，在一個黑人海爾堡大學開始攻讀文學士，此校約 150 名學生。他第一年學習英語、考古、政治、國家管理及荷蘭法律，希望成為在國家事務所當解說員或職員。他居住在威司力宿舍與他同族的人們如馬壇司馬及譚談部成為長久好朋友。雖然有朋友與非洲國會與反皇室活動希望南非獨立有關聯，曼達拉避免介入，在第二次世界大戰他成為英國戰爭的支持者。在幫助第一年學生房宿委員會控制第二年住宿問題，第一年底他成為學生代表反對食物品質，因此他暫時被學校開除，他離開學校未取得學位。

Returning to Mqhekezweni in December 1940, Mandela found that Jongitaba had arranged marriages for him and Justice; dismayed, they fled to Johannesburg via Queenstown, arriving in April 1941. Mandela found work as a night watchman at Crown Mines, “his first sight of South African capitalism in action,” but was fired when the induna (headman) discovered he was a runaway. Staying with a cousin in George Goch Township, Mandela was introduced to the realtor and ANC activist Walter Sisulu, who secured him a job as an articled clerk at law firm Witkin, Sidelsky and Eidelman. The company was run by a liberal Jew, Lazar Sidelsky who was sympathetic to the ANC’s cause. At the firm, Mandela befriended Gaur Redebe, a Xhosa member of the ANC and Community Party, as well as Nat Bregman, a Jewish communist who became his first white friend. Attending talks and parties, Mandela was impressed that Europeans, Africans, Indians and Colored were mixing as equals. He stated later that he did not join the party since its atheism conflicted with his Christian faith, and he saw the South African struggle as being racially based rather than class welfare. Becoming increasingly politicized, in August 1943, Mandela marched in support of a successful bus boycott to reverse fare rises. Continuing his higher education, Mandela signed up to a University of South Africa correspondence course, working on his bachelor’s degree at night.

1940年12月曼達拉回到馬克溫妮，他發現中極袖巴為他與加斯地司安排婚姻，他沮喪的逃往約翰尼斯堡。曼達拉在此找到在皇后煤礦工作當晚間看門監的工作。這是「他第一個南非資本主義成行動」。但當他老板知道他是離家出走時他被解僱。曼達拉與他堂兄弟待在喬治鎮，他被介紹當房屋買賣者，南非國會活動者瓦特司蘇盧確保他在會特京-司得客-壹得曼法律事務所當職員。曼達拉在事務所與南非國會與共產黨員瑞得貝及猶太人共產黨員倍格曼(其成為曼達拉第一位白人朋友)。曼達拉參加會議與黨團，他印象深刻所有歐洲人、南非人、印度人及有色人種摻雜一起是平等的。他沒有參加黨團因為與他的精神與基督教信仰衝突。他看見南非人種歧視甚於種族補助。1943年8月曼達拉遊行支持成功車隊抵制車費漲價。晚上曼達拉到南非大學繼續攻讀學士學位。

Earning a small wage, Mandela rented a room in the house of the Xhoma family in the Alexandra township; although combating with poverty, crime and pollution, Alexandra always remained “a treasured place” for him. In order to save money and be closer to downtown Johannesburg, Mandela moved into at the compound of the Witwatersrand Native Labour Association, living among miners of various tribes; as the compound was a “way station for visiting chiefs”, he once met the Queen Regent of Basutoland. In late 1941, Jongitaba visited, forgiving Mandela for running away. On returning to Thembuland, the regent died in winter 1942; Mandela and Justice arrived a day late for the funeral. After passing his BA exams in 1943, Mandela returned to Johannesburg to follow a political path as a lawyer rather than becoming a privy councilor in Thembuland. He later stated that he experienced no epiphany, but that he simply found himself doing so, and could not do otherwise.

曼達拉賺小錢在亞歷山大鎮的夏馬家租了一個房間，雖然其與貧窮犯罪與空氣污染對峙，對他而言亞歷山大鎮仍然是一個寶貴的地方。為了省錢及居住接近約翰尼斯堡，曼達拉搬到威挖特斯鑾國立勞動機構住宿，他曾遇到保書陀蘭攝政王皇后，1941年晚中極袖巴來訪，

原諒曼達拉離家出走。返回潭布蘭的途中，攝政王於 1942 年冬天去世，他與加斯地司晚一天參加他的葬禮。1943 年參加學士考試之後，曼達拉返回約翰尼斯堡當律師步入了政治生涯。他以後敘述，他發現這世界上沒有救世主，只有自己親自做，否則不可能。

Revolutionary Activity Mandela was the only native African in the faculty, when he began law studies at the University of Witwatersrand. Though facing racism, he befriended a number of liberal and communist European, Jewish and Indian students, among them Ismail Meer, J. N. Singh, George Bizos, Bram Fischer, Joe Slovo, Ruth First and Harry Schwarz. Joining the ANC, Mandela was influenced by Sisulu, spending much time with other activists at Sisulu's Orlando house, including old friend Oliver Tambo. In 1943, he met Anton Lembede, an African nationalist opposed to a racially-united front against imperialism and to an alliance with the communists. Mandela initially shared these beliefs, despite with non-blacks and communists. Deciding on the need for a youth wing to mass mobilize Africans in opposition to their subjugation, Mandela was among a delegation who approached ANC President Alfred Bitini Xuma at his home in Sophiatown; the African National Congress Youth League (ANCYL) was founded on Easter Sunday 1944 in the Bantu Men's Social Centre in Eloff Street, with Lembede as President and Mandela as a member of the executive committee.

政治活動 當曼達拉在威挖特斯堡大學開始學習法律時，他是唯一非洲籍教員。雖然面對種族歧視，他與一些歐洲自由與共產黨人士，猶太與印度學生們和睦相處，其中包括彌而，辛因必肉司，非斯爾，斯露父，…等。加入非洲國會曼達拉被司蘇魯影響，花了很多時間與其他活動份子們在司蘇魯的澳籃多的房子。1943 年他遇見藍貝地反對種族聯合對峙皇家及與共產黨聯合。曼達拉最初分享這些信仰不管與非黑人與共產黨。他決定年輕人去活動非洲黑人對峙種族歧視，曼達拉成為代表團一員接近非洲國會會長粗碼在其蘇非亞住宅。非洲國會青年團成立於 1944 年星期日復活節，粗碼任非洲國會會長，曼達拉任執行委員會一委員。

Mandela met Evelyn Mase (an ANC activist and nurse from Engeobo, Transkei) at Sisulu's house and Married in October 1944. Their first child, Mandiba "Thembi" Thembekile, was born in February 1946, while a daughter named Makaziwa was born in 1947, dying 9 months later of meningitis. He enjoyed home life and welcomed his mother and sister Leabie to stay with him. In 1947, Mandela was succeeded as ANCYL president by the more moderate Peter Mda, who agreed to cooperate with communists and non-blacks, appointing Mandela ANCYL secretary. He disagreed with Mda's approach, in December 1947 supporting an unsuccessful measure to expel communist from the ANCYL, considering their ideology un-African. In 1947, he was elected to the executive committee of the Transvaal ANC, serving under regional president C. S. Ramohano, when he acted against the wishes of the Transvaal Executive Committee by cooperating with Indians and communists, Mandela was one of those forced his resignation.

曼達拉遇見艾韋林在司蘇魯的住房於 1944 年 10 月結婚。他們的第一孩子 1946 年 2 月出生，有一女兒 1947 年出生，9 月後死亡。曼達拉喜歡家庭生活，歡迎他母親與姊妹同住。1947 年成功繼承前任會長彼得馬大成為非洲國會青年團會長。曼達拉不同意馬大支持不成功技倆於非洲國會青年團會長趕走共產黨員因為他們的理念是非非洲化的。1947 年曼達拉

被選為非洲國會執行委員會成員，被任職於地區會長堯磨旱之下，當他不同意執行委員會的意願與印度人與共產黨合作，曼達拉被迫使辭職。

In the 1948 South African general election, the Afrikaner-dominated Herenigde Nasionale Party under Daniel Francois Malan took power. The party expanded racial segregation with the new apartheid legislation. Gaining increasing influence in the ANC, Mandela and his fellows began advocating direct action, such as boycotts and strikes, influenced by the tactics of the Indian South African community. Xuma did not support these measures, and was removed from the presidency in a vote of no confidence, replaced by James Moroka and a more militant cabinet containing Sisisu, Mda, Tambo and Godfrey Pitje. Mandela later stated that “We now guide the ANC to a more radical and revolutionary path.” Having devoted his time to politics, Mandela failed his final year at Wiwatersrand three times; his degree was ultimately denied in December 1949.

1948 年南非選舉黑，南非人多數國家黨派擔耨馬藍藍獲得權利。這黨派擴大種族歧視和立新種族分離法。曼達拉在非洲國會影響力漸增，他與其夥伴開始行動例如抵制與罷工。蘇馬沒有支持這些行動被迫離職，級米摩洛克和軍內閣取代。曼達拉敘述「我們非洲國會現在走向比較激烈與革命的路線。」因為花太多時間在政治，曼達拉在威挖特斯鑾大學第四年失敗，1949 年 12 月他的學士學位被否認。

Mandela took Xuma's place on the ANC National Executive in March 1950. In that month, the Defend Free Speech Convention was held in Johannesburg, bring African, Indian and community activities together to call an anti-apartheid strike. Mandela opposed the strike since it was not ANC-led, but a majority of black workers took part, causing increasing police repression and the introduction of the Suppression of Communism Act, affecting the actions of all protest groups. In 1950, Mandela was elected national president of the ANCYL; at the ANC national conference of December 1951, he continued arguing against a racially-united front, but was outvoted. Therefore, he accepted a united front approach; influences by friends like Morses Kotane and by the Soviet Union's support for wars of national liberation, Mandela's mistrust of communism broke down. He became influenced by Marx, Engels, Lenin, Stalin and Mao, and embraced dialectical materialism. In April 1952, Mandela began work at the H. M. Basner law firm, through his increasing commitment to work and activism.

1950 年 3 月曼達拉代替蘇馬非洲國會的位子。這個月支持言論自由會議在約翰尼斯堡舉行南非人印度人和社區人們在一起，反種族分離罷工。曼達拉反對罷工，因為此行動不是非洲國會領導的而是大部分黑人工人們參加的，造成警察壓制和共產黨的制裁以影響反對群眾。1950 年曼達拉被選為非洲國會青年團會長。在 1951 年 12 月他繼續反對種族結合而被缺選票，於是他接受種族結合。他被朋友模希影響，被蘇俄支持國家解放的戰爭曼達拉不相信共產黨崩潰。他被對馬克斯，列寧，史達林，毛澤東的唯物理論很感興趣。在 1952 年 4 月曼達拉開始在法律事務所做事，由於他對工作與行動的承諾。

He rose to prominence in the ANC's 1952 Defiance Campaign, after the South African National Party came to power in 1948. He was appointed superintendent of the organization's Transvaal chapter and presided over the 1955 Congress of the People. As a lawyer, he was

arrested for seditious activities a few times. With the ANC leadership, he was unsuccessfully prosecuted in the Treason Trial from 1956 to 1961. He was influenced by Marxism and secretly joined the South African Communist Party (SACP) and sat on its Central Committee. He cofounded the militant Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) in 1961. He was arrested, convicted of sabotage and conspiracy to overthrow the government, being sentenced to life imprisonment.

在 1948 年南非國家黨掌權以後，曼達拉在非洲國會增加份量。他被指定傳司為組織的掌權人且主持 1955 年人民國會。在曼達拉擔當律師時，他被逮捕數次因為反抗。雖然擁有非洲國會的領導權，他沒有成功的執行不忠的聽證會於 1956 年至 1961 年。他被馬克思主義影響兒秘密的參加南非共產黨及任職中央委員會。1961 年曼達拉與人合組織甕何頭軍隊。他被逮捕被認為籌謀推翻政府而被判終身監獄。

Imprisonment While traveling by car with Cecil William on August 5, 1962, police arrested Mandela near Howick. Transferred to Marshall Square prison, Johannesburg, he was charged with inciting workers to strike and leaving the country without permission. Representing himself with Slovo as his legal advisor, Mandela intended to use the trial to showcase “the ANC’s moral opposition to racism” while supporters demonstrated outside the court. Moved to Pretoria, Winnie was able to visit him, while he was working for a Bachelor of Laws degree from the University of London. His hearing began on 15 October, and he wore a traditional kaross in court, refusing to call any witness and turning his plea of migration into a political speech. He was sentenced to five years imprisonment, and as he left the courtroom, supporters sung *Nkosi Sikelel I Afrika*.

監獄生活 1962 年 8 月 5 日當曼達拉與威廉開車旅行時，他被警察逮捕被轉移到馬歇兒廣場監獄，他被審有罪因為在沒有批准離開國家前鼓動人們罷工。曼達拉代表他自己要用聽證會以表露非洲國會反對種族歧視，當支持者在法庭外遊行。曼達拉搬到培多利亞，文尼可以拜訪他，當他在倫敦大學攻讀法律學位。曼達拉的聽證會於 10 月 15 日開始他穿著傳統衣服上法庭，拒絕任何見証人把他的要求轉變為政治演說，當他離開法庭他被判 5 年監獄，支持他的人们唱非洲歌曲。

While Mandela was imprisoned, police raided Liliesleaf Farm and arrested those there on 11 July 1963, discovering paperwork documenting MK’s activities. At the subsequent Rivonia Trial, which began in Pretoria Supreme Court on 9 October, Mandela and these comrades were charged by chief prosecutor Percy Yutar with four charges of sabotage and conspiring to violently overthrow the government, facing the death penalty. Judge Quartus de Wet soon threw out the prosecution’s case from December until February 1964, calling 173 witnesses and bringing thousands of documents and photographs to the trial.

當曼達拉被關監獄，1963 年 7 月 11 日警察掃蕩農場並逮捕那裡的人们，發現非法文件，在下一個瑞文尼聽證會，10 月 9 日由培多利亞最高法庭開始。曼達拉與他的夥伴被判四種罪狀包括破壞行動及圖謀顛覆政府，他們面對死刑。廓特司維法官把執法事件毀掉，叫了 173 見証人及攜帶上千文件及照片到聽證會。

Mandel and a few accused admitted sabotage but denied that they had ever adopted Operation Maybuye, a plan to initiate guerilla war against the government. They used the trial to highlight their political cause; one of Mandela's speeches—inspired by Castro's "History Will Absolve Me" speech—was widely reported in the press. The trial gained international attention, with global calls for release of the accused; the United Nations voted to cancel the trial, the World Peace Council awarded the accused medals, the University of London Union voted Mandela to its presidency, and nightly vigils for him were held in St. Paul's Cathedral, London. South Africa's government ignored all calls of clemency, and on 12 June 1964 de Wet found Mandela and two of his co-accused guilty on all four charges, but he sentenced him to life imprisonment rather than death.

當曼達拉及一些被判破壞行動曾組織游擊隊反抗政府但否認的人們。他們用聽證會顯示他們的政治立場,曼達拉其中之一的演說被卡司脫激勵的「歷史將吸取我」被媒體廣大報導。這聽證會得到國際的注意及世界要求釋放被判人們。聯合國投票取消聽證會,世界和平委員會給被判人們發獎章。倫敦大學學會選舉曼達拉為會長及舉行燭光晚會於倫敦聖保羅教堂。南非政府不顧所有要求, 1964年6月12日廓特司維法官判曼達拉及二位人犯四種罪狀,但他將他們的死刑改判為終身監獄。

Mandela and his companions were transferred from Pretoria to the prison on Robben Island, where he remained for the next 18 years of his 27 years in prison. They were locked in a section, isolated from non-political prisoners; Mandela was imprisoned in a damp concrete cell 8 feet by 7 feet, with a straw mat to sleep on. Mocked and harassed by many of the white prison warders, Mandela and the other political prisoners spent their days breaking rocks into gravel, until being reassigned in January 1965 to work in a lime quarry; initially forbidden from wearing sunglasses, but the glare from the lime damaged Mandela's eyesight permanently. At night, he continued working on his LLB degree, but newspaper was forbidden, and he was locked in solitary confinement on a few occasions for possessing smuggled news clippings. Classified as the lowest grade of prisoner, Class D, he was allowed one letter (both ingoing and outgoing mail were censored) and one visit every 6 months.

曼達拉與他的夥伴被培多利亞轉移到羅兵島,他在那裡度過了 27 年的 17 年監獄生涯。他被鎖在一個房屋與非政治犯隔絕。他被關在 8 英尺高 7 英尺寬的圍牆,睡覺在茅草堆。他被很多守監獄的白人嘲笑及羞辱。曼達拉與其他的政治犯白天花時間將石頭打碎,直到 1965 年 1 月到來姆(檸檬的一種)工廠工作,最初被禁止帶太陽眼鏡,因此來姆燦爛的顏色,永遠損傷了他的眼睛。晚間他繼續攻讀他的法律學士,但報紙被禁止,他有時被關禁於獨立的房子因為私藏報紙夾。曼達拉被劃定為最低級的 D 級囚犯,他被允許半年一封信(寄出與寄入)及一個訪客。

In 1967, conditions in Robben Island improved, with black prisoners being permitted to wear trousers rather than shorts, the food quality increased, and they were occasionally allowed to play games. In 1969, an escape for Mandela was developed by Gordon Bruce, but after it was infiltrated by an agent of the South African Bureau of State Security, who hoped to see Mandela shot during his escape attempt, it was abandoned. In 1970, Commander Piet Badenhost became

commanding officer of the prison, seeing an increase in the physical and mental abuse of prisoners. Mandela managed to complain to visiting judges, who had Badenost reassigned. He was replaced by Commander Willie Willemse, who developed a cooperative relationship with Mandela and was intended to improve prison standards. In 1975, Mandela became a Class A prisoner, thereby receiving the best treatment. He started to write his autobiography, which was smuggled to London, but remained unpublished at the time; prison authorities discovered a few pages, and his study privileges were stopped for four years.

1965 年羅濱島的情況改善, 黑人囚犯們被允許穿長袖衫(甚於短袖衫), 食物品質漸好, 他們有時被允許玩遊戲. 1969 年曼達拉有一個逃亡的機會被布魯司策劃, 但被南非國家安全局一辦理員得知, 他希望曼達拉在逃亡時被殺死, 於是此機會被放棄了. 1970 年曼達拉觀察監獄總幹事博德后使囚犯們被身體與心靈的破害增加, 他設法拜訪法庭律師抱怨, 使得博德后被辭職. 他被威廉斯取代, 他與曼達拉有合作關係意圖改善監獄條件. 1975 年曼達拉成為 A 級囚犯被得到最好的待遇. 他開始寫他的自傳, 被非法運到倫敦, 但沒有出版, 監獄當局發現幾頁, 於是他的研讀機會被停止四年.

A few officials met with Mandela in prison; most well-known was the liberal parliamentary representative Helen Suzman of the Progressive Party, who became an ally, championing Mandela's cause outside prison. In September 1970 he was met by the British Labour Party MP Dennis Healey, whom he had known from his visit to London. In December 1974, South Africa's Minister of Justice, Jimmy Kruger visited, though he and Mandela did not get on.

一些官員們與曼達拉在監獄會見, 最知名的是進步黨的自由慈善代表海倫蘇司曼, 她大力推動曼達拉出獄. 1970 年 9 月曼達拉被英國勞工黨會長丹尼司賀力接見, 當曼達拉訪問英國時得知他. 1974 年 12 月南非法院院長吉米窟格曾訪問過, 雖然他與曼達拉和下來.

In 1982 Mandela was transferred from Robben Island to Pollsmoor Prison, along with other senior ANC leaders Walter Sisulu, Andrew Mlangeni, Ahmed Kathrada and Raymond Mhlaba. It was speculated that he was to remove the influence of these senior leaders on the new generation of young black activists imprisoned on Robben Island, called "Mandela University." However, National Party minister Kobie Coetsee says that the move was to enable discreet contact between them and the South African government. 1982 年曼達拉從羅兵島被轉移到波司木監獄, 與其他的非洲國會領導人們如司蘇魯, 馬機尼, 開仁答, 馬拉罷. 他們猜測曼達拉要減少這些年長領導人們對年輕黑人運動者在羅兵島的囚犯們叫「曼達拉大學」的影響. 但國家黨會長科特司說這舉動促使他們與南非政府接觸.

In February 1985, President P. W. Botha offered Mandela his freedom on condition that he unconditionally rejected violence as a political weapon. Coetsee and other ministers had advised Botha against this, saying that Mandela would never commit his organization to giving up the armed struggle in exchange for personal freedom. Mandela indeed spurned the offer, releasing a statement via his daughter Zindzi saying "What freedom am I being offered while the organization of the people remains banned? Only free men can negotiate. A prisoner cannot enter into contracts." 1982 年 2 月布撒總統給曼達拉自由, 他無條件拒絕暴動為政治武器. 寇德西

及其他部長們勸導布撒反對這決定,而說曼達拉絕對不會放棄武器以交換個人自由,曼達拉確實斥責這交易經由他女兒發表一宣言說:「我被給予什麼樣的自由,當這組織的人們的自由仍被拒絕,只有給人們自由,才能談判,一個監獄者不能履行合約。」

The first meeting between Mandela and the national Party government was in November 1985 when Kobie Coetsee met Mandela in Volks Hospital in Cape Town where Mandela was recovering from prostate surgery. In the next four years, a series of meetings took place, laying the groundwork for further contact and future negotiations, but little real progress was made. In 1988 Mandela was moved to Victor Verster Prison and would remain there until his release. Various restrictions were lifted and people such as Harry Schwarz could visit him.

1985年11月曼達拉與國家黨政府第一次會議,當寇德西在開普城遇見曼達拉,當他在醫院做攝護腺手術復原時.緊接著四年一連串的會議展開,為未來的合約與往後的議論鋪下了基礎,但很少的實質上的進展.1988年曼達拉被轉移到威思德監獄他待在那裡直到他被放出監獄,一些限制被減少及人們可以訪問他.

Throughout Mandela's imprisonment, local and international pressure mounted on the South African government to release him with slogan *Free Nelson Mandela*. In June 1988 this reached its peak with the global television broadcast called Nelson Mandela 70th Birthday Tribute, attracted a worldwide audience of 600 million people. Archbishop Trevor Huddleston, president of the Anti-Apartheid Movement, and Oliver Tambo, president of the ANC described this as "the greatest single event we have undertaken in support of the struggle." The finance and production of the event was handled by Tony Hollingsworth, who was later asked by Mandela to produce the official international reception for his release along similar lines. This was in due course staged by Hollingsworth in April 1990 as the Nelson Mandela: An International Tribute for a Free South Africa event, which was broadcast to more than 60 countries.

在曼達拉關進監獄期間,地方與國際壓力加在南非政府身上去釋放他出獄用俗語「釋放曼達拉」。1988年6月這事件達到高峰與國際電視廣播稱「奈爾孫·曼達拉70歲生日致禮」吸引了全世界六億民眾觀看此節目.反種族分離運動會長呼德思頓及非洲國會會長形容這是「我們全力以赴支持此運動奮鬥最偉大的一個事件」。財務與出品由何力司沃士掌管,以後他被曼達拉要求出產官方國際會報他的公開在類似的情況下.1990年4月何力司沃士登台為奈爾孫·曼達拉:國際致禮南非自由事件,被國際電視廣播60餘國家.

In 1989, South Africa reached a crossroads when Botha suffered a stroke and was replaced as president by Frederick Willem de Klerk. Mandela was visited a few times by delegates of the International Committee of the Red Cross, while at Robben Island and at Pollsmoor Prison. Mandela said that: "to me personally, and those who shared the experience of being political prisoners, the Red Cross was a beacon of humanity within the dark inhumane world of political imprisonment." 1989年南非面臨十字路口布撒總統癱中風被換成客拉克總統,曼達拉在羅濱島監獄與波司木監獄被國際紅十字會代表訪問數次,曼達拉說「對我個人來說,那些與我有共同經歷的政治囚犯們,在沒有人性的黑色監獄,紅十字會是一個有人性的標誌。」

Release On 2 February 1990, President F. W. de Klerk reversed the ban on the ANC and other anti-apartheid organizations, and announced that Mandela would shortly be released from prison. Mandela was released from Victor Verster Prison I Paarl on 11 February 1990. The event was broadcast live all over the world. Nelson served in prison over 27 years, first in a prison on Robben Island, later in Pollsmoor prison and Victor Vester Prison. Mandela joined negotiations with President F. W. de Klerk to abolish apartheid and establish multiracial elections in 1994, in which he led the ANC to victory and became South Africa first black president. During his tenure in the Government of National Unity he invited a few political parties to join his cabinet. In negotiation, as agreed to end apartheid in South Africa, he established a new constitution. He also created the Truth and Reconciliation to investigate past human rights abuses. His administration also encouraged land reform, fought for poverty and expanded healthcare services, while continuing the former government's liberal economic policy. He acted as mediator between Libya and United Kingdom in the Pan Am Flight 103 bombing trial, and oversaw military intervention in Lesotho. He declined to run for a second term, and was succeeded by his deputy, Thabo Mbeki. Mandela became an elder statesman, focusing on charitable work in combating poverty and HIV/AIDS through the Nelson Mandela Foundation.

釋放 1990年2月2日德克拉克總統反對禁止非洲國會及其他反種族分離運動組織，而且宣布曼達拉很快就會被從監獄釋放。1990年2月11日曼達拉從威司特監獄被釋放，這事件被全世界電視現場播放。曼達拉關在羅濱島監獄，波司木監獄與威司特監獄總共27年。曼達拉與德克拉克總統聯合在一起取消種族分離，及於1994年建立多種族選舉，於此選舉曼達拉領導非洲國會贏取勝利而成為第一位南非黑人總統。

Presidency of South Africa South Africa's first multi-racial elections were fully implemented on 27 April 1994. The ANC won 62% of the votes in the election, and Mandela, as leader of the ANC, was inaugurated on 10 May 1994 as the country's first black President, with the National Party's de Klerk as his first deputy and Thabo Mbeki as the second in the Government of National Unity. As President from May 1994 until June 1999, Mandela presided over the transition from minority rule and apartheid, winning international respect for his advocacy of national and international reconciliation. Mandela encouraged black South Africans to get behind the previously hated Springboks (the South Africa national rugby team) as South Africa hosted the 1995 Rugby World Cup. After the Springboks won an epic final over New Zealand, Mandela presented the trophy to captain Francois Pienaar, an Afrikaner, wearing a Springbok shirt with Pienaar's own number 6 on the back. This was widely seen as a major step in the reconciliation of white and black South Africa.

任職南非總統時期 1994年4月27日南非多種族選舉正式舉行，非洲國會贏得62%的選票曼達拉是非洲國會的領袖，1994年5月10日成為南非第一位民選黑人總統，在國家統一政府，德克拉克成為第一位代言人，木跋客成為第二位代言人。1994年5月到1999年6月曼達拉統籌從少數政體及種族分離，贏得國際尊敬經由他從國家與國際的聯合，曼達拉鼓勵南非黑人們忘記以前的愁恨春巴客司(南非橄欖球隊)，當南非主辦世界盃橄欖球賽。當春巴客司

打敗紐西蘭贏得冠軍時，曼達拉頒獎杯給隊長黑人皮那，他穿著春巴客司的球隊服 6 號，這廣泛的被認為是非洲白人們與黑人們友好聯合的一大步。

One of Mandela's trademarks was his use of Batik shirts known as "Madiba shirts" after taking the presidency. In South Africa's first post-apartheid military operation, Mandela ordered troops into Lesotho in September 1998 to protect the government of Primes Minister P. Mosisili. AIDS activists such as Edwin Cameron have criticized Mandela for his government's inefficiency in stemming the AIDS crisis. After his retirement, Mandela admitted that he failed his country by not paying more attention to the HIV/AIDS epidemic. Mandela has since spoken out on a few occasions about the epidemic. 曼達拉艾茲的標誌之一是當他成為總統之後，他用巴地克襯衫被認為「馬義巴襯衫」在非洲第一個種族分離的軍隊工作，是 1998 年 9 月曼達拉命令軍隊到來搜叟保護政府總理漢司斯里。艾茲病運動支持者卡末巒批評曼達拉的政府對付艾茲病危機沒有效率。曼達拉退休之後他承認對國家對付艾茲病沒有太大注意。因此曼達拉在一些場合曾多次提到艾茲傳染病。

Mandela was "a democrat and a socialist," asserted by David James Smith (a Biographer). A wide range of progressive social reforms were enacted, aimed at reducing long entrenched social and economic inequalities in South Africa, in the course of Mandela's presidency. Free health care was introduced in 1994 for all kids under the age of six together with pregnant and breastfeeding women making use of public sector health facilities. The reconstruction and development program was launched, which invested in essential social services such as housing and health care. Welfare spending was increased, with public spending on welfare and social grants increased by 13% in 1996-97, 13% in 1997-98 and 7% in 1998-99. The government also introduced parity in grants for communities, including disability grants, child maintenance grants and old-age pensions, which have previously been set at different levels for South Africa's different racial groups.

傳記家大衛吉米說曼達拉是「民主主義者與社會主義者」。在曼達拉成為總統期間，一大範圍的神速社會改革被採納，減少南非長期的社會與經濟不公平。1994 年 6 歲以下小孩看病不用錢及孕婦和為母奶的婦女們運用公共場所健康儀器。重要社會福利如房屋與健康保險重建計劃與進展項目被展開。社會福利政府開支 1996-97 年增加 13%，1997-98 年增加 13% 1998-99 年增加 7%。政府也介紹社區補助金包括殘障服務金，兒童補助金及老年補助金，這些補助金被以前有色政府劃為很低的開支。

The Land Restitution Act of 1994 enabled people who had lost their property as a result of the Natives Land Act, 1913 to claim back their land, leading to the settlement of tens of thousands of land claims. The Land Reform Act 3 of 1996 safeguarded the rights of labor tenants who live and grow crops or graze livestock on farms. This legislation ensured that such tenants could not be evicted without a court order if they were over the age of 65. The Skills Development Act of 1998 provided for the establishments of mechanisms to finance and promote skills developments at the workplace. The Labor Relations Act of 1995 promoted workplace democracy, orderly collective bargaining and the effective resolution of labor disputes. The Basic Conditions of Employment Act of 1997 improved enforcement mechanisms while

extending a “floor” of rights to all workers, while the Employment Equity Act of 1998 was passed to end unfair discrimination and ensure the implementation of affirmative action in the process.

1994 年土地改革案, 使人们於 1913 年國家土地案喪失土地所有權搬回他們的所有權, 使數以千萬的人们得以安居. 1996 年土地改革案安全保護勞動者居住種植農作物與蓄養畜牲的權利. 這法律使 65 歲以上的人民們沒有法庭審判不能被判罪. 1998 年技術培訓案供給財政建立規格及提供技術為就業者. 1995 年勞工關係法案提供工作線民主, 有效的討價還價勞工勞力的運用. 1997 年基本就業法案改進加強技術當擴張所有工作者的權利. 提供工作線民主安全保護勞動者居住種植農作物與蓄養畜牲的權利, 當 1998 年就業平等法案通過結束了不公平歧視及保障就業平等.

Three million people were connected to telephone lines and 1.5 million children were brought into education system, 500 clinics were upgraded or constructed, 2 million people were connected to the electricity, water access was extended to 3 million people, and 750,000 houses were constructed, housing about 3 million people. Compulsory schooling was introduced for African children between 6 and 14 years, while free meals were provided for between 3.5 to 5 million school children. 三百萬人们被通電話線, 一百五十萬小孩被受教育, 500 臨床醫院被設置, 二百萬人们被通電, 三百萬人们被供給水, 七十五萬房屋被蓋起供給三百萬人们居住, 對非洲小孩們義務教育被強制執行 6 至 14 年. 同時免費午餐被供應三百五十萬到五百萬學齡小孩們.

The 1996 Mine Health and Safety Act (amended 1997) was passed to improve health and safety conditions for miners, while a National Drug Policy was launched in 1996 to improve access to essential medicines. The Welfare Laws Amendment Act of 1997 amended to Social Assistance Act of 1992 to provide for equality of access, uniformity and effective regulation of social assistance throughout South Africa. Amendments to the Aged Persons Act in 1998, which provided for the establishment of management committees for homes for the elderly, to require reporting on the abuse of elderly persons, and to regulate the prevention of the abuse of elderly people. 1996 年煤礦工健康與安全法案被通過以改善煤礦工人们的健康與安全情況. 1996 年國家治藥程序頒發以改善年國家治藥情況. 1997 年福利法案與 1992 年的社會協助法案提供公平進出及一致有效社會協助法律建立. 1998 年建立老年福利法案與防止濫待老年報告.

A National Developments Agency was established in 1998, and was mandated to provide funds to civil society organization to meet the development needs of poor communities. The Extension of Security of Tenure Act of 1997 aimed at providing security of tenure to vulnerable occupants of land outside of urban areas. The legislation contained provisions which sought to create and support long-term security for vulnerable occupants while also safeguarding them from unfair eviction. The Land Reform (Labor Tenants) Act of 1996 safeguarded tenants and provided them with the right to claim land. 1998 年建國家進展局建立供給國民社會組織對貧窮社區的需要. 1997 年終身安全法案提供市區以外容易被傷害的鄉村居住者的安全法案.

保護他們安全維護他們的居住權及免於不公平的控告。1996 年土地改革案安全保護租戶們及提供他們要求土地的權利。

Amendments to the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases ACT (COIDA) ensured that the numbers of dependents of workers who tragically lost their lives as a result of work place accidents and diseases had an extended right to compensation beyond the age of 18. Amendments to the Insolvency Act in 1998 aimed to ensure that in bankruptcy cases preference would be given to workers to ensure that monies owed to them takes precedence over the claims of other creditors. 對病人們受傷及疾病償還法案對 18 歲以上工作者因公務不幸失去生命給予家屬償還及保障權利。1998 年銀行保障法案對保護工作者倒閉其所欠債優於欠債者索求。

Retirement Mandela was the oldest elected President of South Africa when he took office at the age of 75 in 1994. He decided not to stand for a second term and retired in 1999. He was succeeded by Thabo Mbeki. After his retirement, Mandela went on to become an advocate for a variety of social and human rights organizations. He expressed his support for the International Make Poverty History movement of which the ONE Campaign is a part. The Nelson Mandela invitational charity golf tournament, hosted by Gary Player, raised over 20 million rand for children's charities since its inception in 2000. This annual event has become South Africa's most successful charitable sports gathering and benefits both the Nelson Mandela Children's fund and Gary Player Foundation equally for various children's causes around the world.

退休 1994 年曼達拉 75 歲當選總統，是南非有史以來最老的黑人總統。1999 年他決定退休不參加第二任競選。他由曼德拉繼承總統。他退休以後成為各種不同社會與人權組織支持者。他表示支持把國際貧窮變成歷史運動的贊助之一。自 2000 年以來，曼達拉國際高爾夫球慈善比賽，由蓋瑞高爾夫球員主持捐贈達二千萬給兒童們慈善金。這每年比賽成為南非最成功的慈善運動，給曼達拉兒童們慈善金與蓋瑞高爾夫基金平分對雙方有益處，其幫助了世界一些兒童們的事件。

In July 2000 Mandela was diagnosed and treated for prostate cancer. In June 2004, Mandela (at age 85) announced that he would be retiring from public life. His health has been declining, and he wanted to enjoy more time with his family. Mandela's 90th birthday was marked across the country on 18 July 2008, with the main celebrations held at his home town of Qunu. A concert was held in Hyde Park, London. Mandela delivered a speech on his birthday and he called for the rich people to help poor people across the world. Despite keeping a low-profile during the 2010 FIFA World Cup in South Africa, Mandela made a rare public appearance during the closing ceremony, where he received a rapturous reception. In January 2011, he was hospitalized for two and half days for a respiratory infection. On 8 December 2012, he was hospitalized for a recurring lung infection, and had surgery to have gallstones removed a week later. Nelson Mandela passed away on 5 December 2013.

2000 年 7 月曼達拉被診斷攝護腺癌症及醫療。2004 年 6 月曼達拉(85 歲)宣佈退休於公開的生活。他的健康每況愈下且他想花較多的時間與家人團聚。曼達拉 90 歲生日被南非整個國家劃下日曆 2008 年 7 月 18 日，隆重慶祝於他的家鄉庫努。一個大型音樂會在倫敦亥得公園舉行，曼達拉給了一個演講鼓勵全世界富有的人們幫助貧窮的人們。2010 年南非

世界杯足球賽，曼達拉給了一個稀有的公開演講，在那他得到了熱烈的慶祝。2011年1月曼達拉因為細菌感染住院兩天半。2012年12月8日他因為肺感染而住院，一星期後動手術將腎臟拿掉。2013年12月5日曼達拉與世長辭。

Acclaim Nelson Mandela is considered by South Africans as “the father of the nation.” Eve Fairbank of *Newsweek* said “Mandela rightly occupied an untouched place in the South African imagination. He’s the national liberator, the saviour, its Washington and Lincoln rolled into one.” In November 2009, the United Nations General Assembly announced that Mandela’s birthday, 18 July, is known as “Mandela Day” to mark his contribution to world freedom. Individuals, communities and organizations were requested to donate 67 minutes to doing something for others, commemorating the 67 years that Nelson Mandela gave to the struggle for social justice.

稱讚 曼達拉被南非人民們稱為「國父」新聞週報佛爾巴客說「曼達拉佔據南非人民們無法觸摸到的想像，他是國家解放者與拯救者，他把華盛頓與林肯兩角色結合而為一。」2009年11月聯合國理事會把曼達拉的生日7月18日訂為「曼達拉日」。個人們、社區們、與組織們被要求貢獻67分鐘為別人做事以紀念曼達拉給予67年的生命為社會公平而奮鬥。

2. Xinjiang’s Terrorist Issues

2. 新疆暴恐問題

In 2013, there were about 10 terrorist incidents occurred in China, 9 in Xinjiang and 1 in Beijing. Therefore, Chinese government dealt with the terrorist issues very aggressively. During the period of 9/3-9/13, 2013, Chinese President Xi Jinping visited Tajikistan, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan and Uzbekistan, and attended the Shanghai Cooperation Organization summit. He said “Nowadays, international and regional situations are complicated and changeable, we confront serious challenges for three extremisms: smuggling, international crimes, and terrorist attacks.

2013年中國至少披露10宗涉暴恐活動，其中9宗發生在新疆，1宗發生在北京，即10月28日的天安門“金水橋事件”。2013年的中國反恐，顯得格外重視與醒目。9月3日至13日，習近平對土庫曼斯坦、哈薩克斯坦、烏茲別克斯坦、吉爾吉斯斯坦進行國事訪問並出席上海合作組織比什凱克峰會期間，多次提及反恐議題。習近平說，當前國際和地區形勢複雜多變，上海合作組織既面臨難得機遇，也面臨嚴峻挑戰。“三股勢力”、販毒、跨國有組織犯罪嚴重威脅本地區安全穩定。

On March 1, 2014, there was a terrified terrorist attack occurred in Kunming, Yunnan. In the front of train station in Kunming, there were 11 terrorists wearing uniforms holding knives to hack people such that 29 civilians were killed and 143 were injured, which caused a horrified tragedy. According to the government’s investigation and some evidence in the scene, this incident was planned and implemented by a group of separatists in Xinjiang.

2014年3月1日21時20分，中國雲南省昆明發生蒙面暴力恐怖事件，11名統一着裝的暴徒蒙面持刀，在中國雲南省昆明火車站廣場售票處，砍殺無辜群眾，造成29人死亡143人受傷。根據政府官方調查及“昆明‘3·01’事件”事發現場證據表明，這是一起由新疆分裂勢力一手策劃組織的嚴重暴力恐怖事件。

In April 30, 2014, there was another terrorist bombing attack at the railroad station in Urumqi, which killed 3 people and injured 79 people. President Xi Jinping said that we realize the serious threat of terrorism, and we have to work very diligently for implementing various techniques and methods to prevent their evil acts, and to fight for the separation of Xinjiang.

2014年4月30日晚，新疆乌鲁木齐火车南站站外发生爆炸案，死亡3人、伤79人，重伤4人。这是一起暴力恐怖性质的爆炸袭击案件。中共中央总书记、国家主席习近平得知30日新疆乌鲁木齐市火车南站站外发生爆炸案件后立即作出指示，必须深刻认识新疆分裂和反分裂斗争的长期性、复杂性、尖锐性，反暴力恐怖斗争一刻也不能放松，必须采取果断措施，坚决把暴力恐怖分子的嚣张气焰打下去。

The 4th Conference on Interaction and Confidence Building Measure in Asia was held in Shanghai, May 20-21, 2014. However, on 22 May 2014, there was a suicide bombing occurred in a morning market in Urumqi, Xinjiang, which caused 31 killed and 94 people injured. In the morning around 7:50 am, at the Sharka Park in Urumqi, the terrorists drove a car to cross over the fence to ignite the bombing system to kill many innocent civilians. In the 5-22 violent incident, the methods of the terrorist attacks were brutal and horrified. This incident demonstrated that terrorists despised justice, humanity and civilization.

2014年5月20-21日第四届亚信峰会於上海舉行，在亚信峰会刚刚闭幕并对反恐发出一致声音。2014年5月22日在中国新疆维吾尔自治区乌鲁木齐市沙依巴克区人民公园西侧的公园北街早市发生一庄严重暴力恐怖案件。事件造成43人死亡（其中无辜群众39人，袭击者4人），94人受伤，死伤者大多数是买早餐的老年人。7点50分许暴徒驾车冲破防护隔离铁栏，冲撞碾压人群，引爆爆炸装置，造成大批民众伤亡。在“5·22”暴恐案件中，暴恐分子滥杀无辜，手段极其卑劣、残忍。这再次暴露了恐怖主义势力漠视基本人权，践踏人类道义，挑战人类社会共同秩序、人类文明共同底线的凶残本质。

In May 2014, the level of terrorism was rising, and about 850,000 volunteers went onto the street for patrols in Beijing. Approximated 100,000 people collected terrorist information. Twenty two inspection stations were established and each vehicle was examined thoroughly. 31 cross roads were provided safeguards. There were big rewards for people who reported terrorism, the lowest monetary \$40,000 Chinese Yen, the highest without limit. In the mean time, other provinces also adopted different measures to prevent terrorism. Hebei, Guangdong and Yunnan did rehearsals for preventing terrorism. In Shanghai and Changsai, local police carried guns for patrols. Some cities provided armed arterial tanks. A few medias and scholars said that China has entered a new era of “all people preparing for anti-terrorism.”

2014年五月底北京社會面反恐防暴全面升級，85萬名平安自願者走上街頭開展巡邏，10萬名收集涉恐暴信息，22個進京檢查站實行一級查控，逢車必查，31條公交線路每車將配備乘務安全員，群眾舉報涉恐涉暴線索獎勵辦法公布，重要線索獎金不低於4萬元，上不封頂。與此同時全國其他省份也採取不同反恐防暴專項行動，河北廣東雲南等地通過不同層面反恐防暴演練，上海長沙等城市則實行了民警配槍巡邏，部份城市重點地區配備了裝甲車等重型裝備。有媒體與學者們稱中國已進入「全民反恐」時代。

On July 28, 2014, there was one more terrorist attack in Shacha county in Xinjiang, which killed 37 citizens, and 59 terrorists were shot dead by police for protecting people. A group of terrorists attacked county office using knives and axe hammers. They burned and tossed stones to cars, and killed innocent civilians which caused tens of people dead and injured, 31 vehicles were damaged, and 6 were turned and totaled. Through police's investigation, this was an organized, planned and implemented terrorism. Nowadays, policemen tried to collect all information and identified the suspects. All injuries were sent to local hospitals for curing. People were as usual to work and the community was in order.

2014年7月28日凌晨於新疆莎車縣发生一起严重暴力恐怖袭击案件，導致37民眾受害，59名暴徒被擊斃。一伙暴徒持刀斧袭击艾力西湖镇政府、派出所，并有部分暴徒窜至荒地镇，打砸焚烧过往车辆砍杀无辜群众，造成数十名维汉族群众伤亡，31辆车被打砸其中6辆车被烧。公安民警迅速依法处置，击毙暴徒数十名。经由警方调查，这是一起有组织，有预谋，计划周密，性质恶劣的严重暴力恐怖袭击案件。目前，公安机关正全力侦破案件，受伤群众得到有效救治，当地社会秩序正常。

In the language of Chinese, "Xinjiang" means newly established territory. Since the beginning of the establishment of Xinjiang, it has been some security problems. According to the world regulation, Xinjiang has been a territory of China for over 300 years. From 1949 up to now, Xinjiang has been fighting between anti-separation and separation. Who are those Xinjiang's terrorists, and why they want to organize terrorist attacks and incidents? Most Xinjiang's terrorists are people with low incomes who are not satisfied the government, or Xinjinag's separatists who think that Han people invade Xinjiang, and want to separate Xinjiang from China. Furthermore, they are influenced or incited by those terrorists outside China. Civilians are innocent. To protect people's daily security, we have to cooperate together and to work very hard to prevent any terrorist's attack.

客观的说，“新疆”这个词，本身就是故土新归和新辟疆土的意思。新疆自成立之初其区域就一直是一个动态的过程，按照现行的世界规则，新疆当之无愧的是中国的领土，从300年前清朝平定大小和卓叛乱开始，到建国后的现在，新疆就一直在分裂与反分裂的旋律中前进。新疆恐怖分子究竟是什么人呢？为何要在新疆发动恐怖袭击呢？新疆恐怖分子多是部分低收入的少数民族群众和妄图分裂新疆的疆独分子，前者因为生活问题对社会和政府心生不满，后者则固执认为汉族侵略了新疆，再加上境内外恐怖组织的煽风点火，所以经常发动恐怖行动。无论怎样都好，百姓是无辜的，伤害百姓生命，威胁到社会安全，就必须严打。暴恐分子行为恶劣，必须严厉打击，将其一干人等全部歼灭。

As a whole, Chinese people encounter the risk of terrorism increasingly. Mei Jiangmin, chair of anti-terrorism research center, Chinese Renmin University, indicated that after 10-28 (gold-water bridge car attack incident), the gangster head of terrorism in eastern Turkey provoked terrorists inside and outside of China to utilize armed forces and terrified techniques to attack people which caused 3-1 Kunming terrorist attack, and 5-22 horrified terrorist incident in Xinjiang. These incidents reflect the terrorists outside of China who influenced the terrorists in China tremendously.

從整體看中國面臨恐暴威脅風險增高中國人民公安大學反恐怖研究中心主任梅建明表示自北京“10.28”暴力恐怖(金水橋汽車衝撞事件)以來,東突恐怖頭目在境外叫囂鼓動恐怖份子用自動武器來實施恐怖行為,暗示用更殘酷與殘暴的手段來製造恐怖襲擊“3.1”雲南省昆明火車站的殘忍恐怖案,與“5.22”嚴重暴力恐怖案,正表現了恐怖手段的升級,暴力破壞力的增強,也反映出境外恐怖份子對境內恐怖份子的鼓動與影響.

Recently, a series of terrorists attacks in China remind that Chinese government and people have to cooperate together to prevent these attacks in order to secure peoples' daily security. President Xi Jinping and Premier Li Kechang instructed that we have to work very hard to investigate all attack incidents successfully, and to indict all suspects and put them into justice immediately, and to prevent terrorist attacks

近期接连几起暴恐事件,凸显了我国反恐形势的严峻,提醒我们对于反恐时刻不能掉以轻心。暴恐案件发生后,习近平主席和李克强总理立即作出重要批示,要求迅速侦破案件,抓紧缉捕和严惩暴恐分子,并强调对暴恐活动和恐怖分子必须警钟长鸣、重拳出击,持续保持严打高压态势,全力维护社会稳定。暴恐恶行,法无可赦;伤害无辜,天理难容!毫无人性的暴恐势力,与豺狼无异。这些豺狼的目的是搞乱中国。但他们绝不会达到目的,而只会使中国整体更团结。我们要对暴恐势力说,你越猖狂,距离灭亡越近。等待豺狼的唯有猎枪。几杆“猎枪”已瞄准暴恐势力。

3. Venerable Master Tsu-Yun's Proper Drama Could Cultivate World Humans' Minds

3. 虛雲大師的佛法真諦可教化世界人心



Masters Hsu Yun (middle) and Hsuan Hua (right)
虛雲老和尚(中)與宣化老和尚(右)

Venerable Master Hsu (1840-1959) passed away at the age 120. He was an exceptional Buddhist monk in the contemporary Chinese history, who earned the 45th Patriarch of

Buddhism. The 6th Patriarch of Buddhism Ven. Master Huinen created five branches of Buddhism in the Tang Dynasty. **Ven. Master Hsu inherited the leading master of all five Zen branches, the 47th, 43th, 12th, 8th, 8th of Caodong, Linji, Yunmen, Fayen, Weiyang, respectively.** His Zen and cultivation hardship were highly praised by all Chinese. Venerable Hsu's proper dharma of Buddhism could cultivate humans' minds and prevent terrorism throughout the world, and keep all people in peace. **"To develop all good virtues, holding moral precepts is the fundamental method for cultivation."** We first describe the benefits for holding five moral precepts, then briefly assert Venerable Master Hsu's four principles for cultivation, and finally discuss his interpretation for *The Shurangama Sutra*.

虛雲大師 120 歲圓寂(1840-1959)，乃中國近代千年罕見一代禪宗高僧。六祖惠能大師一華開五葉（宗）續佛慧命，虛雲大師繼承中國曹洞宗四十七代，臨濟宗四十三代，雲門宗第十二代，法眼宗第八代，沩仰宗第八代，其禪功和苦行倍受稱贊，以一身而兼禪們五宗法脈，整頓佛教叢林，興建名剎，為近代中國禪宗神聖的傑出代表。虛雲高僧的大乘佛法真諦可教化全世界人心，防止暴恐，徹底拯救全地球人類。「長養一切諸善根，戒為無上菩提本。」我們先討論受持五戒的利益，其次簡述虛雲大師：修行的四個先決條件，最後談論虛雲大師開示楞嚴經。

Benefits for holding five moral precepts

受持五戒的利益

Holding five moral precepts is a fundamental behavior of a human. Five moral precepts are similar to five virtues: love, honesty, courtesy, wisdom, trust, in Ru (Confucian) philosophy. No killing is like love, no stealing means honesty, no illegal sex attributes to courtesy, no lying would earn trust, and no alcohol produces wisdom. If one could hold these five virtues, then one would benefit tremendously. A sutra says: "If one could hold these five moral precepts, then one would have 25 angels in safeguard." Another sutra describes: "If one could hold these five virtues, then one would obtain ten benefits: 1. gaining wisdom; 2. studying sutras as Buddha; 3. wisdom never fading; 4. cultivation progressed, 5. happiness in life; 6. overcoming the death, 7. bliss in prajna paramita, 8. obtaining non-attached-ness; 9. toward enlighten-ness; 10. possession of wealth.

受持五戒是人道的根本，五戒與儒家的五常有相通之處。五常就是仁、義、禮、智、信。不殺曰仁，不盜曰義，不婬曰禮，不妄曰信，不酒曰智。一個人受持五戒，會有無盡的利益。《灌頂經》卷三說：我們受持五戒，必感得廿五名善神的護佑。《月燈三昧經》卷六記載，持戒清淨者能獲得十種利益：1 滿足一切智，2 如佛所學而學，3 智者不毀，4 不退誓願，5 安住於行，6 棄捨生死，7 慕樂涅槃，8 得無纏心，9 得勝三昧，10 不乏信財。

In addition, if one doesn't kill and save lives, then one would obtain health and longevity. If one doesn't steal and makes donations, then one would gain wealth. If one doesn't do illegal sex, then one would have a happy family life. If one doesn't lie and praise other people, then one would receive good reputation. If one doesn't do alcohol and drug, then one would have a wise mind and a healthy body. Consequently, if one could hold these five moral precepts, then one would be free from worry, want and sickness, and obtain freedom, happiness and bliss. When one passes away, one would not go to hell, or become an animal or a ghost in next life, and one would go to heaven and obtain bliss. There are many merits if one could hold these five virtues in one's life.

此外，如果我們不殺生而護生，自然能獲得健康長壽；不偷盜而布施，自然能發財享受富貴；不邪淫而尊重他人的名節，自然家庭和諧美滿；不妄語而讚歎他人，自然能獲得善名美譽；不喝酒而遠離毒品的誘惑，自然身體健康，智慧清明。所以，受持五戒，現世可以免除苦惱、恐怖，可以獲得身心的自由、平安、和諧、快樂；將來可以免墮三塗惡道，得人天果報，乃至成佛。受持五戒，如同在福田裡播了種，縱使不求，自然有許多利益加身，自然享有無盡的功德善果。

**Venerable Master Hsu Yun:
Four principles for cultivation**

虛雲大師：修行的四个先决条件

(1) Belief of cause and outcome.

(1) 深信因果

If one wants to cultivate one's mind, then one has to believe the cause and outcome. If one does a good behavior, then one will produce a good outcome. If one does a bad behavior, then one will generate a bad outcome. Buda said: "If one wants to know the causation of one's previous life, then the outcome appears in one's current life. If one wants to know the outcome of the future, it depends how one is behaving now." He also said: "After hundreds of reincarnations, the causes produce outcomes. When the causation and outcome meet together, one will obtain what one does." In *The Shurangama Sutra*, it asserts: "If one does a good action, then one receive a good outcome. If one does a bad action, then one receives a bad outcome."

无论什么人。尤其想用功办道的人。先要深信因果。若不信因果。妄作胡为。不要说办道不成功。三涂少他不了。佛云。“欲知前世因。今生受者是。欲知来世果。今生作者是。”又说。“假使百千劫。所造业不亡。因缘会遇时。果报还自受。”楞严经说。“因地不真。果招纡曲。”故种善因结善果。种恶因结恶果。种瓜得瓜。种豆得豆。乃必然的道理。

(2) Holding moral precepts.

(2) 嚴持戒律

If one wants to cultivate one's mind, then one has to uphold moral precepts seriously. Holding moral precepts is a fundamental technique to become a Bodhisattva. Holding moral precepts could produce calmness. Due to the calmness, wisdom will be cultivated. If one cultivates without holding precepts, then it is useless. There are four purified minds illustrated in *The Shurangama Sutra*. If one does not uphold moral precepts to cultivate one's mind, then one is never possibly successful. If one could uphold moral precepts, one would earn the respects of all people. For instance, in the ancient time, there was a poisonous dragon to destroy many people. About five hundreds well-cultivated monks (called Alouhans) tried to utilize Zen to expel it, but failed. However, a monk said: "If you were a moral and wise man, please leave here." Then the dragon left. Those Alouhans asked the monk how he expelled the dragon. The monk replied: "I did not use Zen, but used moral precepts." This story tells us that how important it is to hold moral precepts. Hence, if one could hold moral precepts, then one could improve one's mind cultivation. Ven. Master Huinen, the 6th Patriarch of Chinese Buddhism, ever said: "If one's behavior is pure and clean, then there is no need to hold precepts; if one's mind is without attachedness, there is no need to utilize Zen." For instance, if you observe a beautiful angel without dress in

the moon, will you be not affected? If somebody scolds you, will you be not hated this person? If you are calm and are not affected by all surroundings, then you cultivate your mind well.

用功办道首要持戒。戒是无上菩提之本。因戒才可以生定。因定才可以发慧。若不持戒而修行。无有是处。楞严经四种清净明诲。告诉我们。不持戒而修三昧者。尘不可出。纵有多智禅定现前。亦落邪魔外道。可知道持戒的重要。持戒的人。龙天拥护。魔外敬畏。破戒的人。鬼言大贼。扫其足迹。从前在罽宾国近著僧伽蓝的地。有条毒龙时常出来为害地方。有五百位阿罗汉聚在一起。用禅定力去驱逐他。总没法把他赶跑。后来另有一位僧人。也不入禅定。仅对那毒龙说了一句话。‘贤善远此处去。’那毒龙便远跑了。众罗汉问那僧人什么神通把毒龙赶跑。他说。‘我不以禅定力。直以谨慎于戒。守护轻戒。犹如重禁。’我们想想。五百位罗汉的禅定力。也不及一位严守禁戒的僧人。或云。六祖说。‘心平何劳持戒。行直何用参禅。’我请问你的心已平直没有。有个月里嫦娥赤身露体抱著你。你能不动心吗。有人无理辱骂痛打你。你能不生嗔恨心吗。你能够不分别冤亲憎爱人我是非吗。统统做得到。才好开大口。否则不要说空话。

(3) Firm confidence

(3) 坚定信心

If one wants to cultivate one's mind, then one must have a confidence in Buddhism. Confidence is the mother of achieving Buddhism. Without a confidence, it is impossible to achieve Buddhism successfully. If one wants to resolve life and death, then one must have a firm confidence in Buddhism. Buddha said: "Any human is born originally wise and clean, but not able to cultivate into a Buddha due to attached-ness and illusion." Therefore, he created many methods to cure the attached-ness and illusion of humans' minds. One should believe that Buddha is true and any human could be cultivated into a Buddha. If one does not use the correct method, then it is hardly to be cultivated into a Buddha. Venerable Master Yunjia said: "If one could verify a dharma-image without attached-ness, then one would suddenly wash away one's sin, and possibly be cultivated into a Buddha."

想用功办道。先要一个坚定信心。信为道源功德母。无论做什么事没有信心。是做不好的。我们要了生脱死。尤其要一个坚定信心。佛说大地众生皆有如来智慧德相。只因妄想执著。不能证得。又说了种种法门。来对治众生的心病。我们就当信佛语不虚。信众生皆可成佛。但我们为什么不成佛呢。皆因未有如法下死功夫呀。譬如我们信知黄豆可造豆腐。你不去造他。黄豆不会自己变成豆腐。即使造了。石膏放不如法。豆腐也会造不成。若能如法磨煮去渣。放适量的石膏。决定可成豆腐。办道亦复如是。不用功固然不可以成佛。用功不如法。佛也是不能成。若能如法修行。不退不悔。决定可以成佛。故我们应当深信自己本来是佛。更应深信依法修行决定成佛。永嘉禅师说。‘证实相。无人法。刹那灭却阿鼻业。若将妄语诳众生。自招拔舌尘沙劫。’他老人家慈悲。要坚定后人的信心。故发如此弘誓。

(4) Determination of a method

(4) 决定行门

Once one has a confidence, then one must select a correct method to cultivate. Don't change from one method into another method constantly; otherwise, it is hardly to cultivate into a Buddha. One could choose and determine one method to practice it repeatedly and permanently,

for instances, chanting the name of Amitahba, or reciting certain sutra, or meditation with Zen. If one cannot be successful using one method today, one practices it again tomorrow. If one cannot be successful this year, then one practices again next year, this life, next life, forever, etc, and eventually one will be successful. If one changes from one method into another method constantly, then one wastes one's time and life, and never be successful.

信心既具。便要择定一个法门来修持。切不可朝秦暮楚。不论念佛也好。持咒也好。参禅也好。总要认定一门。蓦直干去。永不退悔。今天不成功。明天一样干。今年不成功。明年一样干。今世不成功。来世一样干。汾山老人所谓。‘生生若能不退。佛阶决定可期。’有等人打不定主意。今天听那位善知识说念佛好。又念两天佛。明天听某位善知识说参禅好。又参两天禅。东弄弄。西弄弄。一生弄到死。总弄不出半点‘名堂。’岂不冤哉枉也。

Venerable Master Hsu's interpretation for *The Shurangama Sutra*

虚雲大師開示楞嚴經

The Shurangama Sutra was motivated by Arya Ananda which is a great exemplar for us. In the sutra, it emphasizes “sex” which produces many contexts. In my opinion, it is most important to concentrate on studying *The Shurangama Sutra*. There is no need to read the translation, but to focus on reading the main texts such that one could recite the sutra. Then one could apply the front texts to understand the back texts or vice versa. This sutra describes how to cultivate from an ordinary human into a Buddha and from no sensation into sensation. It illustrates how to produce a mountain, a river and a land, four levels of Zen, six levels of an ordinary human, cultivation, verification, confusion and understanding, causation, outcome, moral precepts, etc., very completely and extensively. It is very beneficial if one could study *The Shurangama Sutra* thoroughly. This is an era of terrorism, how could one find a wise man to instruct proper dharma? *The Shurangama Sutra* has the best instructions. If one could study or recite this sutra thoroughly, then one could cultivate one's mind and life successfully.

楞嚴一經，由阿難發起，作我們的模範。經中着重說“淫”字，由這“淫”字，說出很多文章來。以我的愚見，最好能專讀一部楞嚴經，只要熟讀正文，不必看注解，讀到能背，便能以前文解後文，以後文解前文。此經由凡夫直到成佛，由無情到有情，山河大地，四聖六凡，修證迷悟，理事因果戒律，都詳詳細細的說盡了，所以熟讀楞嚴經很有利益。現在是末法時代，你到那里訪善知識呢？不如熟讀一部楞嚴經，修行就有把握，就能保綏哀救，消息邪緣，令其身心。入佛知見，從此成就，不遭歧路！

The Shurangama Sutra originally contained 100 chapters, but only ten chapters left. It illustrates the right way of Buddhism in the first four chapters. It shows a human how to cultivate in chapters 5 and 6. It tells one how to develop the great virtues of Bodhisattvas in chapters 8 and 9. It finally interprets wild thoughts and illusions in chapter 10. Arya Ananda inquired many questions about cultivation and Buddha Shakyamuni answered them in this sutra. All the dharma comes from mind. Ananda observed Buddha's 32 images with golden color which he fell in love. “How do you observe these images?” Buddha asked him. “I use my mind through my eyes to observe them,” answered Ananda. “Where is your mind?” asked Buddha. “I observe two eyes are on the Buddha's face. I have eyes, ears, nose and tongue on my face, and therefore, I can comprehend my mind using them. It seems that mind is on my face, actually, it is in my body,” said Ananda. “Mind is not on your face, not in your body, and not in between. It does not touch anything, and therefore, it has no image. Because one does not understand two fundamental

meanings of life, one cannot become a Bodhisattva. Firstly, there is no life and no death. People may think that the feeling of surrounding is the mind, which is not true. Secondly, there is no Bodhisattva and no nirvana. Actually, mind and body are pure. There are six organs including eyes, ears, nose, tongue, body and brain. Therefore, there are six feelings including vision, hearing, smelling, speaking, taste, and thought. In addition, six consciousnesses contain the consciousnesses of eyes, ears, nose, tongue, body, and brain. Moreover, there are earth, water, fire and wind. Plus, there are the large sky, the large sight and the large view. If we add them all together, there are 25 causes total. In *The Shurangama Sutra*, Buddha taught 25 laymen how to cultivate into 25 Bodhisattvas according to 25 causes.

此經原有百卷。而此土所譯。只有十卷。初四卷示見道。第五第六卷示修行。第八地九卷漸次證果。最後並說陰魔妄想。阿難尊者為眾生示現詢問。而佛首明諸法所生。惟心所現。因阿難尊者見佛三十二相。如紫金光聚。心生愛樂。佛問其將何所見。阿難尊者白佛言。用我心目。由目觀見。如來勝相。佛問心目何在。阿難尊者白佛言。縱觀如來。青蓮華眼。亦在佛面。我見觀此浮根四塵。只在我面。如是識心。實居身內。佛告心不在內不在外。亦不在中間。若一切無著。亦無是處。諸修行人。不能得成無上菩提。皆由不知二種根本。一者無始生死根本。則汝今者與諸眾生用攀緣心為自性者。二者無始菩提涅槃。元清淨體。則汝今者識精元明。能生諸緣。緣所遺者。由諸眾生遺此本明。雖終日行而不自覺。枉入諸趣。應知諸法所生。惟心所現。一切因果世界微塵。因心成體。而一切眾生不成菩薩。皆由客塵煩惱所誤。色聲香味觸法為六塵。眼耳鼻舌身意為六根。是為十二處。加眼識耳識鼻識舌識身識意識六識為十八界。另地水火風為四大。再加空大見大識大為七大。合為二十五數。由二十五位賢聖分別自陳宿因。入道途徑。

In the six levels of reincarnations, sex is the worst behavior since sexual acts deteriorate one's spirit and body. One kills animals and eats their meats for nutrition. Afterwards, one has a series of bad behaviors such as lying, stealing, smoking, alcohol, sexuality, etc., and then commits sins and crimes, which is no good. In the beginning, Ananda was lured by a beautiful lady and was interfered by the obscenity. After he was lectured and taught by Buddha, he learned to adjust himself and to cultivate well. Later, he could comprehend Buddha's 32 images, was not lured by the lady anymore, developed all the great virtues and became the 2nd Patriarch of Buddhism. When a man meets a woman, he can think himself as a woman. When a woman meets a man, she can think herself as a man. This is a good way to prevent a sexual act. If one concentrates on cultivating, it can change one's spirit and mind. For instance, before I lived a secluded life, I also thought of and dreamed of a love story and marriage. After I took refuge with Buddhism, I recited Amitahba and sutra, and practiced Buddhist dharma day and night. Therefore, when I dreamed, I dreamed of recitation and Buddhism. Keep in mind that onion, garlic and spice are no good, since they increase one's desire. Please avoid such spices which could help one's cultivation. One's cultivation cannot depend on anybody else, but oneself. For instance, Ananda was a cousin of Buddha, he had to cultivate himself. If one concentrates on cultivating diligently, it is possible to develop good virtue and reach a high level of spiritual life. One could eventually reach ten levels of enlightenments through ten believes, ten moral precepts, ten practices, ten salutes and repentances. Though there are 25 ways of Bodhisattvas' cultivations, they are all good. The beginner may learn from the 24th Bodhisattva Dashize's way of cultivation, or the 25th Bodhisattva Guanyin's way of cultivation. If Amitahba resigned in the western paradise, Guanyin would replace him. Similarly, if Guanyin resigned, Dashize would substitute her. Bodhisattva Dashize used reciting "Amitahba" to reach the bliss land. If one could learn from Dashize to concentrate reciting "Amitahba" to catch six consciousnesses just like a

child thinking of the mother day by day, month by month, year by year, then the child could cultivate successfully and meet the real Buddha eventually. If one learns from Guanyin from hearing, thinking, cultivating, accept all Bodhisattvas' spirits in the high level and sympathize all animals in the low level, then one could eventually reach the Buddha's land.

至於六道輪迴。姪為基本。三界流轉。愛為之基。阿難尊者為眾生示現。歷劫修行。幾難免摩登伽之難。所以示罪障之中。姪為首要。因姪損體。遂殺生補養。而盜妄等惡。亦隨之而生。阿難見了如來三十二相。如紫光金聚。對摩登伽之美色。而不愛樂。男子見了女子。或可觀想自己亦作女子。女子見了男子。或可觀想自己亦作男子。以杜妄想。自己終日思想。卻可轉移心境。譬如我從前幼時再加垂辮髮。衣俗衣。終日所觸所想無非俗事。晚上做夢。無非姻親眷屬。種種俗事。後來出家所做所思。不出佛事。晚上做夢。亦不外念佛等等。至蔥蒜五辛。不可進食。未免助長慾念。所謂除其助因。修其正性。更加精勤增進。自能漸次成就。更須自己勤奮。不可依賴他人。阿難尊者以王子佛弟。捨其富貴。出家從佛。希望佛一援手。即得超登果位。詎知仍需自己悟修。不能假借。不過吾人如能發心勤修勿怠。則由十信十住十行十迴向以至十地。亦自得步步進益。以達等覺妙覺。而三界七趣。無非幻妄所現。原本不出一心。即一切諸佛之妙明覺性。亦不出一心。是以心佛眾生。三無差別。香嚴童子可說即是我鼻。憍梵菩薩可說即是我舌。二十五位聖賢因地。雖有不同。修悟並無優劣。不過現在時機。發心初學。似以第二十四之大勢至菩薩。及第二十五之觀世音菩薩。二種用功方法。或更相宜。觀世音菩薩於阿彌陀佛退位時。補佛位。而大勢至菩薩。則候觀世音菩薩退位時。補佛位。大勢至菩薩以念佛圓通。吾人學習應念阿彌陀佛。都攝六根。淨念相繼。得三摩地。因十方如來。憐念眾生。如母憶子。若子逃逝。雖憶何為。子若憶母。如母憶時。母子歷生。不相違遠。若眾生心。憶佛念佛。現前當來。必定見佛。至於觀世音菩薩。則從聞思修。入三摩地。上合十方諸佛。同一慈力。下合六道眾生。同一悲仰。若遇男子樂持五戒。則於彼前。現男子身。而為說法。令其成就。若有女子五戒自居。則於彼前現女子身而為說法。令其成就。如是或現天人。或現聲聞緣覺以至佛身。所謂三十二應。以及十四無畏。四不思議。經無量劫。度無量眾生。眾生無盡。諸位善體斯意可也。

Please read “Venerable Master Hsu Yun’s Self-description of His Time and His Instructions” in the section of religion in *The Voice of Han*. **Venerable Master Hsuan Hua (1918-1995) took Venerable Master Hsu’s heritage and became the Ninth Patriarch of the Weiyang Sect, and the 45th Patriarch of Buddhism.** He propagated Buddhism in USA in 1959, and established the Dharma Realm Buddhist Association and the City of Ten Thousands of Buddhas in Talmage, CA in 1979. Hundreds of thousands of people took refuges from Venerable Master Hsuan. He had offered a tremendous help to humans, and had saved many lives in the world.

請閱讀「漢之聲」宗教篇「虛雲老和尚自述年譜與開示」其弟子宣化老和尚克紹箕裘，接其法脈成為馮仰宗第九代祖(佛 46 祖)，1959 年演揚傳佛教於美國，1979 年在加州舊金山附近建立法界佛教總會與萬佛聖城，教化無數眾生，演揚正法，救拔群苦，普渡眾生。

4. Conclusion

4. 結論

Not only the extreme separatists in Xinjiang should learn a great lesson from Nelson Mandela for Anti-apartheid, but Chinese communist government also should learn how he dealt with racial issues and established a new democratic South Africa. Mandela was “a democrat and

a socialist,” which is similar to Chinese government who consider themselves as a socialist government. A wide range of progressive social reforms were enacted, aimed at reducing long entrenched social and economic inequalities in South Africa, during the Mandela’s presidency. Free health care was introduced in 1994 for all kids under the age of six together with pregnant and breastfeeding women making use of public sector health facilities. The reconstruction and development program was launched, which invested in essential social services such as housing and health care. Welfare spending was increased, with public spending on welfare and social grants increased by 13% in 1996-97, 13% in 1997/98 and 7% in 1998-99. The government also introduced parity in grants for communities, including disability grants, child maintenance grants and old-age pensions, which have previously been set at different levels for South Africa’s different racial groups, etc.

不僅新疆主張分離主義的人們應該學習曼達拉總統反對種族分離的偉大課訓，中國共產黨政府也應該學習曼達拉總統如何處理種族問題及締造「新民主南非」。曼達拉是「民主主義者與社會主義者」此類似中國共產黨政府認為他們是社會主義者。在曼達拉成為總統期間，一大範圍的神速社會改革被採納，減少南非長期的社會與經濟不公平。1994年6歲以下小孩看病不用錢及孕婦和為母乳的婦女們運用公共場所健康儀器。重要社會福利如房屋與健康保險重建計劃與進展項目被展開。社會福利政府開支1996-7年增加13%，1997-8年增加13% 1998-9年增加7%。政府也介紹社區補助金包括殘障服務金，兒童補助金及老年補助金，這些補助金被以前有色政府劃為沈很低的開支，…等。

China belongs to all 1.3 billion people, but not dominated by one communist party. In the 37 years of economic reform, Chinese rapid growth is due to the transformation from the planning economy into market economy. However, China has not made any progress in political democratization yet. There have been many uprisings and turmoils, and tens of thousands of people have sacrificed for a democratic China up from the first Opium War with Britain in 1840 and down to Dr. Sun Yet-Sen’s establishment of the Republic of China in 1911. Moreover, in 1989, Chinese communist government cracked down the pro-democracy demonstrations in the Tiananmen Square, which killed thousands of their own people. As Chinese commemorate those heroes today, it reminds us that they shall not have died in vein. Our generation will take over their unfinished tasks and wills, and strive for a democratic China. It is similar to the Abraham Lincoln’s Gettysburg address that **China will be a new nation conceived in liberty, and dedicated the proposition that all men are created equal, that shall have a new birth of freedom -- and that government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish from the earth.**

中國是屬於13億所有人民的，而不是為一黨共產黨所有與專政。經由37年經濟改革，中國經濟快速成長基於計劃型經濟轉型至市場型經濟的結果，但中國尚未在政治民主化做出進步。自從1840年中英第一次鴉片戰爭到1911年孫中山先生締造中華民國成千上萬英雄豪傑為中國民主捐軀獻身。更而甚之，1989年中國共產黨政府利用中國人民解放軍槍殺數千無辜為民主奮鬥的群眾。當我們紀念為這些偉大為國捐軀的英雄豪傑們，再次提醒我們他們的熱血沒有白流，我們這一代將繼承他們未完成的遺願與使命，繼續為中國民主而努力奮鬥。類似林肯總統於蓋之堡演講中國將成為立意於自由的國家，獻身於所有人們生而平等的主張，將成為有一個民有、民治、民享的新政府，將永垂不朽於地球。

This is a new millennium of terrorism since on 11 September, 2001, four US airplanes hijacked by terrorists crashed into the World Trade Twin Tower in New York City, the Pentagon

and a field in Pennsylvania killing about 3,000 people. Since the developments of high technology and the sophisticated skills of terrorists have been improved, terrorist attacks have been increased each year. No matter which government in which country in the world proposes which method to prevent any terrorism, it only takes a stopgap measure temporarily, but not a cured measure permanently. Nowadays, the world is in chaos. Besides the terrorist attacks, there are a multitude of issues such as natural and man-made calamities, global climate change, environmental pollution, human hunger, morality fading, etc., and the earth and people are gradually ill. It takes about ten years to produce a flourishing forest, but it takes a hundred years to generate a well-behaved generation of humans in the world. Chinese superior culture and history of five thousand years are like horses running millions of miles in length and breath. Confucianism, Buddhism and Taoism, the three main branches of philosophy, fall into hundreds of discourses. The preliminary rudiment of remedy for these issues is the philosophy of Confucius and Tao which can educate people, families, countries and the world. The ultimate rudiment of remedy for these issues is the proper drama of Buddhism, originated from Buddha Shakyamuni (464-385 B.C), up to recent Venerable Master Hsu Yun (1840-1959), could cultivate all humans' minds and prevent terrorism in the world, and keep all people in peace and prosperity.

自從 2001 年 9 月 11 日美國四架飛機暴恐襲擊導致三千多人死亡以來，這是一個暴恐襲擊的新世紀，暴恐襲擊橫行，由於電腦高科技進步，暴恐襲擊的手段變本加厲，無論任何國家任何政府採取任何控制暴恐襲擊的措施，只是暫時治標而無法永久徹底治本。當今世界混亂，除了暴恐襲擊，天災人禍，全球氣候變化，環境污染，道德淪喪，五濁惡世，整個地球與人類已經開始生病。十年樹木百年樹人，中國優良文化上下五千年縱橫千萬里，經綸儒釋道三家出入百家言。初期治本的方法有孔孟老莊思想，可修身齊家治國平天下；最高治本的方法唯有南無本師釋迦牟尼佛到達摩祖師東傳衣鉢至六祖惠能大師，再傳正法至近代虛雲高僧的大乘佛法真諦，可教世界化人心，防止暴恐與徹底拯救全人類。

References

1. <http://nobelprize.org>
2. Nelson Mandela-Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia
3. www.history.com/topics/nelson-mandela
4. 21st century economic newspaper in China, 2014.
5. Nelson Mandela, Time Magazine, Dec. 2013
6. Abraham Lincoln's Gettysburg address
7. 虛雲 老和尚自述年譜

清泉

Qingquan



The UN climate conference opened in Peruvian capital, Lima, on December 1, 2014.

2014年12月1日 聯合國氣候大會開幕式在秘魯首都利馬舉行

**UN Climate Change Conference
in Lima, Peru, December 2014**

2014年12月聯合國氣候變化會議於
秘魯利馬舉行

A new 2015 agreement on climate change acted by all nations, took an important step forward in Lima following two weeks of negotiations by over 190 countries with about 11,000 delegates throughout the world in December 1- 14, 2014.

2014年12月1日到12月14日，全世界對氣候變化踏出了重要的一步，有一個新的2015年的協議在秘魯首都利馬被所有國家採取行動，全世界超過190個國家包括約11,000代表們參予連續兩個星期的氣候變化協商會議。

The Lima Climate Conference achieved the following important outcomes and decisions:

- **Pledges were made by both developed and developing countries prior to and during the COP that took the capitalization of the new Green Climate Fund (GCF) past an initial \$10 billion target.**
- **Levels of transparency and confidence-building reached new heights as several industrialized countries submitted themselves to questioning about their emissions targets under a new process called a Multilateral Assessment.**

- **The Lima Ministerial Declaration on Education and Awareness-raising calls on governments to put climate change into school curricula and climate awareness into national development plans.**

利馬氣候變化會議完成下列重要政策 與決定:

- 在利馬氣候大會之前及之中, 已開發國家與開發要求從聯合國綠化氣候基金取 100 億美金作為目標基金通過。
- 在幾個工業國家遞交詢問在新過程稱多元測驗關於他們的減低碳化的目標時, 透明及建立信心層次達到新的程度。
- 利馬部長宣言在教育及認知要求政府把氣候變化列入學校課程及氣候認知列入國家進展計劃。

The United States announced that it would decrease its emissions between 26 % and 28 % by 2025 from its 2005 levels in order to achieve ‘economy-wide reductions on the order of 80 % by 2050.’ China announced it would reduce carbon dioxide emissions by 2030 to try and peak early including through a great role for renewable energies and big improvements in areas like energy efficiency. These joint statements came after the European Union’s announcement to cut emissions by at least 40 % by 2030 which it made November, 2014. China has announced plans to establish a nationwide carbon market in 2016. The news followed 2014 [US-China joint announcement](#) on climate change in which China pledged to cap emissions by 2030 and increase the share of non-fossil fuels in the country’s energy mix by 20%.

美國宣稱將在 2025 年之前減低排氣 26% 到 28%, 從他們 2005 年的標準, 以進展 2050 年之前全面經濟減低排氣至 80%. 中國宣稱將在 2030 年之前減低二氧化碳排氣, 提早嘗試包括再生能源與能源改進. 這中美兩國宣稱繼歐聯之後, 歐聯 2014 年 11 月宣稱將在 2030 年之前減低排氣 40%. 2014 年中美兩國氣候變化聯合宣言, 中國宣稱將在 2016 年建立二氧化碳市場, 中國承諾 2030 年之前減低二氧化碳排氣 30%, 並增加非化石氣於中國能源至 20%.

The meeting concluded with the different nations agreeing on ground rules of how all countries can submit their contributions to the new agreement. The next meeting will be held in Paris, late 2015. The Intended Nationally Determined Contributions (INDCs) will form the foundation for climate action post 2020 when the new agreement is set to come into effect.

參予國家們最後擬定在 2015 年年底在巴黎通過制定新協議的內容, 同時還同意對所有的國家可以在 2015 年第一季, 提交新協議的基本規則。當新的協議設置生效, 預期國家確定貢獻 (INDCs) 將完成 2020 年後氣候行動基礎。

The evidence for global climate change is clear 全球氣候變化的證據已很明確

The globe has become warmer over the last century. During the 20th century, the average surface temperature has increased by about $0.6^{\circ} \pm 0.2^{\circ}\text{C}$ (United Nations’ Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC)). The global precipitation patterns have also changed. Climate change has hit all regions of the world. The climate changes include global warming, stronger hurricanes, more droughts, more intense heat waves, glacier retreat, loss of sea ice, and melting ice caps. It has affected everything from access to food and water to extreme weather (IPCC).

從上個世紀開始地球氣溫逐漸暖化。20 世紀的平均地表溫度大約上升了攝氏 $0.6\pm 0.2^{\circ}$ (聯合國氣候變化政府間專門委員會 (IPCC))。全球降水模式也發生了改變。氣溫的變化已延昇到了全世界各地。氣候的變化包括全球的暖化，強烈颶風的增加，更多乾旱的發生，更嚴重的熱浪，冰川的退縮，海冰的減少，以及冰帽的融化。它已經影響到了一切，從食物和水的獲取，以致極端的天候。

Rising global temperatures have been accompanied by changes in the weather and climate. Many places have seen changes in rainfall, resulting in more floods, droughts, and more frequent and severe heat waves. The planet's oceans and glaciers have also experienced some big changes - oceans are warming and becoming more acidic, ice caps are melting, and sea levels are rising. As these and other changes become more pronounced in the coming decades, they will likely present challenges to our society and our environment. (EPA)

全球氣溫上升引發伴隨而來天氣和氣候的改變。許多地方都可觀察到在明顯的變化中，降雨量的增加，導致更多洪水的爆發，降雨量的減少，引發更多的乾旱，以及更加頻繁和嚴重的熱浪。地球上的海洋和冰川也正經歷大的變化 - 海洋正在變暖，海水變得更酸，冰帽開始融化，海平面的提升。因此這些和其他的變化將在未來幾十年變得更明顯，它們將會成為我們社會和我們環境的一大挑戰。



The arctic climate is also changing. Permafrost is warming. Ice cores drawn from Greenland, Antarctic, and tropical mountain glaciers show that the Earth's climate responds to change through solar output, the Earth's orbit, and greenhouse gas levels. Global sea level rose about 17 centimeters in the last century. The ocean has absorbed much of this increased heat, with the top 700 meters of ocean showing warming of 0.302 degrees Fahrenheit since 1969. All three major global surface temperature reconstructions show that Earth has warmed since 1880. The Greenland and Antarctic ice sheets have decreased in mass. Data from NASA's Gravity Recovery and Climate Experiment show Greenland lost 150 to 250 cubic kilometers (36 to 60 Cubic miles) of ice per year between 2002 and 2006, while Antarctica lost about 152 cubic kilometers of ice between 2002 and 2005.

北極的氣候也在變化中。多年凍土地區氣候的變暖。來自格陵蘭、南極、和熱帶高山冰河的冰芯通過太陽能的釋出，地球的軌道，和溫室氣體的標準，清楚表明地球的氣候正在改變。全球海平面從上個世紀以來大約上升 17 厘米。海洋大量吸收了增加的熱量，從表面到 700 米深的海洋呈現自 1969 年以來的升溫，大約增加了華氏 0.302 度。全球三個主要的地表溫度重建表明自 1880 年以來，地球已經回暖。格陵蘭和南極冰原大規模的減少。來自美國宇航局的重力恢復和氣候實驗數據顯示，在 2002 年到 2006 年間，格陵蘭島每年喪失

150 到 250 立方公里（36 至 60 立方英里）的冰，而在 2002 年到 2005 年之間，南極冰損失約 152 立方公里。

The thickness of the Arctic sea ice is also declining. Glaciers are retreating almost everywhere around the earth such as the Alps, Alaska, Africa, Himalayas, etc. The acidity of surface ocean water has increased by about 30 percent from the beginning of the Industrial Revolution.

北極海冰的厚度也在不斷下降。地球上的冰川退縮幾乎無處不在，如阿爾卑斯山，阿拉斯加，非洲，喜馬拉雅山等。海洋表面海水的酸度已經從工業革命開始到現在大約增加了百分之三十。

In the United States, the number record of high temperature events has increased, while the number record of low temperature events has decreased. In addition, the number record of the intensive rainfall events has increased. The acidity surface of ocean water has increased.

在美國，高溫事件的發生次數已經增加，而低溫事件的發生次數已經減少。另外，集約降雨事件發生次數也在上升。海水面的酸度已經升高。

Humans are responsible for recent climate change 人類需要為近期氣候變化負責

Climate change is changing our economies, health, and communities in various ways. The Great Barrier Reef is the world's largest cluster of corals and other exotic marine life. Unfortunately, the Australian federal government approved dumping waste from a mining project into the Great Barrier Reef despite warnings of the Great Barrier Reef Marine Park Authority and other scientific advice.

氣候變化正在用各種方式改變我們的經濟，健康和社會。大堡礁是世界上最大的珊瑚生長地和其他外來海洋生物群的集中區域。不幸的，澳大利亞聯邦政府批准了採礦工程可以傾倒廢棄物進入大堡礁，不顧大堡礁海洋公園管理局的警告和其他科學家們的勸告。

Burning fossil fuels has released carbon dioxide and other types of pollution that contribute global climate change into the atmosphere.

Humans are largely responsible for global warming. Two of the main causes are burning fossil fuels and cutting down forests.

燃燒化石燃料釋放出二氧化碳和其他類型的污染，正加速全球氣候變化進入大氣層中。人類需要為全球暖化負很大的責任。燃燒化石燃料和砍伐森林是兩個主要的原因。

Greenhouse gases increase heat

溫室氣體增加暖化

Greenhouse gases in the earth's atmosphere absorb infrared radiation from the sun and radiate heat in all the direction. This process is causing the greenhouse effect. The more of these gases the Earth accumulates, the more the Earth heats up. This increase in the heat is called the greenhouse effect. The primary greenhouse gases are water vapor, carbon dioxide (CO₂), methane (CH₄), nitrous oxide (NO₂), ozone, and fluorocarbons.

在地球的大氣層中溫室氣體吸收從太陽和來自四方輻射熱的紅外輻射。這個過程引起了溫室效應。這些氣體在地球累積的愈多，地球溫度增加的愈高。這種熱量的增加被稱為溫室效應。主要的溫室氣體包括水蒸汽，二氧化碳（CO₂），甲烷（CH₄），一氧化二氮（NO₂），臭氧，和碳氟化合物體。

Water Vapor

水蒸汽

Water vapor is water in a gaseous state. It is invisible. It is very important to climate change, because 95% of greenhouse gases is water vapor. If the sky is clear in the evening, the heat will escape and temperature will drop and cold. But if it is cloudy, the heat will get absorbed by water vapor, the temperature will stay warm.

水蒸汽是水呈現出氣體狀態。它是無形的。它對氣候變化是非常重要，因為百分之九十五的溫室氣體是水蒸氣。假如傍晚時分天空晴朗，熱氣會遁逃，氣溫會快速下降，變得寒冷。但是，假如是多雲的天空，水蒸氣會吸收大量的熱，氣溫會保持溫暖。

Carbon Dioxide

二氧化碳

In 2011, CO₂ composed 84% of U.S. greenhouse emissions. CO₂ stays in the atmosphere for thousands of years. Burning fossil fuels such as oil or coal generate the release of carbon dioxide (CO₂) into the atmosphere like a thickening blanket, trapping the sun's heat and causing the Earth to warm up. Humans have increased the amount of CO₂ in the atmosphere by about 40% over the past 150 years. The oceans absorb more CO₂ and make water more acidic. The acidic water will impact the life of the oceans. In the U.S, like most other industrialized countries, burning fossils fuels is the greatest man made source of greenhouse gases.

2011 年，美國溫室氣體排放量的百分之八十四是二氧化碳。二氧化碳存留在大氣層中可以長達數千年之久。燃燒化石燃料如石油或煤會產生二氧化碳 (CO₂)，釋放到大氣層中像鋪蓋一張粗厚的毯子，充滿了太陽的熱量，導致地球的升溫。人類在過去 150 年中大約增加百分之四十大氣中二氧化碳的含量。海洋吸收更多的二氧化碳，引起海水變得更酸。酸性水質將影響海洋裡的生物。美國亦像其他大多數的工業化國家，燃燒化石燃料是最大的人造溫室氣體來源。

Methane

甲烷

Methane is 21 times more efficient at absorbing radiation than CO₂, but it stays in the atmosphere only 10 years. Methane is produced by greenhouse gases through agriculture practices including livestock manure management.

甲烷的吸收輻射是二氧化碳吸收輻射的 21 倍，它是更為嚴重，但是它停留在大氣層中只有 10 年。溫室氣體的甲烷產生是經由農業效應，包括牲畜糞便的管理。

Deforestation

砍伐森林

Deforestation is clearing the massive forests of the Earth. It is damaging to the land. The rainforests of the world will completely vanish at the current rate of deforestation. The main cause of deforestation is agriculture. Farmers cut forests to provide for planting crops or grazing the livestock. Logging is the second cause. Even though forest soils are moist now, they will quickly dry out without protection from the tree covers that block the sun. Trees also keep up the water cycle by the returning the water vapor back into the atmosphere.

砍伐森林是清除地球的大量森林。它對土地有相當大的危害。依照目前森林砍伐的速度，世界上的熱帶雨林將會從地球上完全消失。砍伐森林的主要原因是農業。農夫砍伐森林為了種植農作物或牧養牲畜。伐木是第二個主要原因。儘管森林土壤現在是潮濕的，當

無保護的樹林擋住了太陽，土壤將會迅速乾透。樹木也會經由水蒸氣返回大氣層來保持水的循環。

Trees play an important role in absorbing the greenhouse gases that fuel global warming. The trees and plants need to use CO₂ to grow. Clearing forests release large amounts of CO₂. Since the beginning of the industrial revolution, the burning of fossil fuels and extensive clearing forest have contributed to 40% increase in CO₂ in the atmospheric concentration. Today's CO₂ levels have reached around 400 parts per million (ppm) in the north hemisphere. We need to stop cutting down trees and manage forest resources. Let forest environment remain intact.

樹木在吸收導致全球暖化的溫室氣體方面扮演很重要的角色。樹木和植物需要吸收二氧化碳來成長。砍伐森林會釋放出大量的二氧化碳。自工業革命開始，燃燒化石燃料和廣泛的清除森林已造成了二氧化碳在大氣中的濃度增加了百分之四十。在北半球今天二氧化碳的級別已達到大約四百萬分率。我們需要停止砍伐樹木和管理森林資源。讓森林環境保持不變。

Solutions

解決方案

Decarbonization

脫碳

Decarbonization is the process of the reducing carbon content, and it is very important now. Scientists say that we need to control the emissions that cause climate change. Otherwise, average U.S. temperatures could be 3 to 9 degrees higher by the end of the century. Coal-burning power plants are the largest source of CO₂ pollution in U.S producing 2.5 billion tons every year. Automobiles create nearly 1.5 billion tons of CO₂ annually.

脫碳化的過程是要減少碳含量，它目前是非常的重要。科學家們說，我們需要控制造成氣候變化的廢氣排放量。否則，在這世紀末美國的平均氣溫可能增高 3 度到 9 度。燃煤發電廠是二氧化碳污染的最大來源，每年美國大約產生 25 億噸。汽車每年產生將近 15 億噸的二氧化碳。

The Deep Decarbonization Pathways Project (DDPP) is a collaborative initiative to understand and show how individual countries can transition to a low-carbon economy and how the world can meet the internationally agreed target of limiting the increase in global mean surface temperature to less than 2 degrees Celsius (°C). Achieving the 2°C limit will require that global net emissions of greenhouse gases (GHG) approach zero by the second half of the century. (Pathways to Deep Decarbonization Interim 2014 report)

深脫碳途徑工程（DDPP）是一個共同協助的倡議，需了解並展示各個國家如何能夠過渡到低碳經濟和世界如何實現國際商定限制溫度增加的目標，讓全球平均地表溫度的增加能達到小於攝氏 2 度。為完成 2°C 的極限要求，本世紀下半葉溫室氣體（GHG）的全球淨排放量需趨近於零。（途徑來深脫碳 2014 年中期報告）

Humans need to reduce the pollution from vehicles and power plants. There are some solutions: make car that run cleaner and burn less gas, modernize power plants, and generate power from nonpolluting sources. We can increase renewable energy sources such as wind, solar, and geothermal energy. Natural gas has the lowest CO₂ of all fossil fuels.

人類需要降低車輛和發電廠的污染。有一些解決方案：製造汽車採用比較清潔的燃料，產生較少的污染氣體，發展現代化的電廠，和從無污染資源發電。我們可以增加利用再生能源，例如風能，太陽能 and 地熱能。天然氣是在所有化石燃料中釋放最少的二氧化碳。

Renewable Energy

再生能源

Renewable energy comes from resources which are naturally replenished constantly such as sunlight, rain, tides, waves, wind, and geothermal heat. In its various forms, they directly derived from the sun or from heat generated deep within the earth. Renewable energy is not derived from fossil or nuclear fuel. Renewable resources occupy around 16% of global final energy consumption. There are 30 countries have renewable energy contributing more than 20% of energy supply.

可再生能源的資源可天然不斷的補充，如陽光，雨，潮汐，波浪，風和地熱。在各種的形態，它們直接來自於太陽或者地球深處產生的熱能。可再生能源，不是來自化石或核能燃料。再生資源佔有全球各地的最終能源消費量的百分之十六。目前有 30 個國家的可再生能源可以供應百分之二十以上的能源。



The European Council held its first policy debate on how to deal with climate change and use more renewable sources of energy for 2020 to 2030. The debate underlined the important link between the Europe 2020 strategy, industrial competitiveness and climate and energy policies.

歐洲理事會對於如何應對 2020 年至 2030 年氣候變化和能源使用更多的再生資源有了第一次政策性的辯論。這辯論強調了歐洲 2020 年的策略，產業競爭力，氣候和能源政策之間的重要聯結。

Renewable energy is sustainable and never run out. It produces very little to no waste products. It will decrease relying on those countries that produce oil. Renewable energy projects will bring economic benefits. It also has disadvantages. Currently, it is difficult to generate the same amount of energy from renewable fuels. We need to reduce the amount of energy we use or build more energy facilities. Renewable energy is relying on the weather for its sources. Solar collectors need clear skies and sunshine. Wind turbines need wind to turn blades. Hydro generators need rain to fill dams to supply flowing water. Weather is inconsistent and unpredictable. The current cost of renewable energy technology far exceeds traditional fossil fuel generation.

再生能源是可持續的，永不會耗盡的。它僅產生一點點廢棄物甚或完全沒有廢棄物。這可以減少對產油國家的依賴。可再生能源工程將會帶來有效的經濟效益。但它也有缺點。目前，很難從可再生燃料產生等同於現在所需的能源量。我們需要減少我們使用的能源量，或者建造更多的能源設施。可再生能源需要依賴天候。太陽能集熱器需要晴朗的天空和陽光。風力渦輪機需要風去轉動刀葉。水輪發電機需要雨水充滿水壩提供活水。往往天氣是變化多端的和不可預知的。目前可再生能源技術的成本遠遠超過傳統的化石燃料發電。

Rebuild Forests

重建森林

The forest is important for creating a balance of the atmosphere's main greenhouse gases: carbon dioxide (CO₂), nitrogen dioxide (N₂O), methane (CH₄), etc. These main greenhouse gases are important for maintaining a stable climate cycle for human civilization. Healthy forests closely affect the four main carbon sinks: the oceans, the atmosphere, soil and plants. Forest plants and soil carbon sequestration from the trees grow tall and strong, but also from many life-cycle re-uses.



森林造就了碳匯、氮匯的平衡運作，使得大氣中的主要溫室氣體：二氧化碳（CO₂）、二氧化氮（N₂O）、甲烷（CH₄）等，長期以來可以處在一個釋放量與固定量之間的平衡，產生了人類文明習慣的穩定週期氣候。森林的健康密切影響著其他四大碳匯：海洋、大氣、土壤、植物。森林中的植物與土壤碳匯，來自樹木的長高長壯，也來自眾多生命的循環再利用。

The carbon trading market suggests that loop-cutting operations will be suitable to sustain forests. The forest needs to be treated as a long-term crop to run. It is important to take old trees and capture the carbon from them in the form of timber to make durable furniture. Reforestation work will also be important.

碳交易市場提倡，在適合循環伐採經營的平緩林地上，把林木當成長期作物來經營，在林木趨老、捕捉碳的速度趨緩的適當時間點，伐採變成用材、製成耐用的家具建築；並且運用良好的再造林作業，讓林地上再度矗立活的「碳捕捉固定器」。

Forests store carbon. Forest soil can store twice the carbon as trees and other plant material. Proper forest management is very important. The forest can effectively absorb carbon outside. The forest floor is large and complex. It is important to maintain a healthy forest ecosystem of biomass and food webs. These can also play an important role as a forest carbon sink function. Good soil health is to maintain plant growth. Proper soil PH, allowing more seed reproduction, are important to create more complex biological networks operate. This goes back to a stable carbon and nitrogen cycle. If the operation of the forest complex is destroyed, this is bad for the environment. Dead trees cannot fix carbon or release nitrogen into the atmosphere.

Internationally, one of the goals is to "to reduce deforestation and forest degradation caused by greenhouse gas emissions." Efforts by the World Bank have resulted in the signing several treaties on biological carbon trading. These include: reforestation to accelerate the recovery of degraded forests and retaining natural habitat regulation to reduce land erosion.

森林是碳貯存室。森林土壤中的碳貯存量幾乎是貯存在林木及其他植物體的兩倍。妥善經營林木是很重要的。讓這些植物體可以有效吸收外在的碳；維持健全森林生態系中生物量與食物網是龐大複雜，也同樣發揮森林碳匯的功能。良好的土壤健康則維繫上面的植物生長；適當的土壤酸鹼度與滲透性，又讓更多種子繁衍，串起更複雜的生物網的運作。這一連串都回饋到碳與氮的穩定循環。倘若森林中複雜的運作被破壞，死亡腐敗的生命就不能被生物再吸收利用，而把原本固定下來的碳與氮，釋放到大氣中。在國際上「減少毀林及森林退化造成的溫室氣體排放」的努力當中，世界銀行陸續簽訂了幾項生物碳交易，這當中包括：在熱帶地區的放牧地恢復造林；在退化的森林加速恢復天然闊葉林與混合林的演替；保留自然棲地調節、水文流動減少、土地侵蝕等。

The impact on the marine carbon sinks

對海洋碳匯的影響

After heavy rain, unhealthy forest soil is lost to streams and rivers. This is bad for the environment. If soil flows into the sea, this will affect marine organisms, algae, and coral growth. Marine organisms have calcium-shells and they are important for marine carbon fixation body, Poor growth or death of these marine organisms will release more carbon. This will, in turn, cause ocean acidification and rise in temperature. All in all, this causes an unfavorable growth environment.

大雨過後，不健康森林土壤的流失入溪水、河水，需要增加用藥與能量的投入；如果流到出海口，將會影響海洋生物、藻類及珊瑚的生長，而這些有鈣質或碳酸鈣質外殼或骨骼的生物們，正是海洋中最主要的碳固定體，牠們若生長不良或死亡，就會釋放碳引起海水酸化，而溫度上升也會加增酸化，使牠們的生長環境更加不利，而形成惡性循環。

The other impacts

其他的影響

Soil erosion will result in the loss of soil carbon and nitrogen. Carbon and nitrogen will be found in their free states and lead to superior oxidation. Erosion will lead to increases in temperature, which will accelerate carbon and nitrogen escaping to the atmosphere. The loss of soil land can no longer support the growth of food and forests.

森林水土保持功能退化，土壤的侵蝕將造成了土壤中碳與氮的流失，在水中形成的游離態會造成優氧化也會進入大氣。裸露土地會因土壤溫度升高，加速碳與氮逸漏到大氣。強降雨率增加、過度開墾，若因為下雨沖刷這些暴露的土壤，更是加倍喪失原本固定的含碳量，而流失土壤的土地，也難再支撐糧食及森林的生長。



Deforestation will cause the carbon sinks to irreversibly release excessive carbon and nitrogen into the atmosphere. If the temperature increases by 1 °C, the majority of coral, which is Earth's largest carbon sink, will disappear. If the temperature increases by 2 °C, the ice sheets will melt. If the temperature increases by 3 °C, the whole carbon cycle process will be reversed, soil and plants will release massive amounts of carbon, and most of the Amazon rainforest will become a desert.

森林的毀壞，將引起海洋、土壤、植物中的碳匯朝向不可逆的運作，加速碳與氮滲入大氣層中。上升 1°C，多數海洋珊瑚消失，地球最大碳匯崩壞；上升 2°C，摧毀所有珊瑚礁、冰原及海冰持續融化；上升 3°C，整個碳循環過程都會顛倒過來，土壤和植物大量釋放碳、亞馬遜雨林大部分會被燒毀成一片沙漠，洋流與氣流的全球循環瓦解。自此，這個不可逆，再也無法減緩。

It is important to maintain the health of forests in order to maintain the ocean, soil, and plants. Finally, it is critical to protect, restore, and sustain our natural resources.

讓健康森林的維護與有效經營，來維繫海洋、土壤、植物中的碳吸存功能的穩定運作。最後，保護、恢復和維持自然資源 及水土資源的保護...等，對全球氣候變化也有幫助。

References:

<http://climate.nasa.gov/evidence/>

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/>

<http://www.epa.gov/climatechange>

<http://www.skepticalscience.com//empirical-evidence-for-co2-enhanced-greenhouse-effect-advanced.htm>

<http://www.livescience.com/>

<http://environment.nationalgeographic.com/>

<http://unsdsn.org/>

<https://www.google.com>

<http://www.solarschools.net/>

森林我的家-人禾環境倫理發展基金會報及臺灣林務局研究報告

The website of the UN climate conference in Lima, December, 2014

The 6th BRICS Summit in Brazil and President Xi Jinping's Visit to Latin America in 2014

2014 年金磚五國第六次高峰 會議於巴西與習近平主席 拉丁美洲之行

Yen Jin

嚴淨



Russian President Putin, Indian Prime Narendra Modi, Brazilian President Dilma Vana Rousseff, Chinese President Xi Jinping and South African President Jacob Zuma at the 6th BRICS summit in Fortaleza, Brazil, 14-16 July, 2014.

The 6th BRICS summit

金磚五國第六次高峰會議

Brazil hosted five leaders including China, India, Russia and South Africa for the 6th BRICS summit 2014 in Fortaleza and Brasília on July 14-16, days after the end of the World Cup. The summit adopted the [Fortaleza Declaration and Action Plan](#), the Agreement on the New Development Bank, the Treaty for the Establishment of a BRICS Contingent Reserve Arrangement and Agreements among BRICS Development Banks and Export Credit Insurance Agencies.

繼世界足球賽畢幕之後，2014年7月14日-16日巴西主持金磚五國第六次國家領導人高峰會議款待中國、俄羅斯、巴西、印度、南非五位國家領導人於巴西福塔萊薩和巴西利亞兩地；此高峰會議採取福塔萊薩宣言，行動計劃，同意成立金磚國家開發銀行及應急儲備基金。



President Xi Jinping attended the 6th BRICS summit and paid a visit to Latin America, 13-21 July, 2014. He met with Brazilian President Dilma Vana Roussoff, Russian President Putin, Indian Prime Minister Narendra Modi, and South African President Jacob Zuma at the summit. They announced to cooperate together to establish “a new BRICS development bank” and “a BRICS contingent reserve agreements among BRICS development banks and export credit insurance agencies.” The first action is to assist the funding for the infrastructure of BRICS and developing countries, and the latter is to help countries in financial crisis for providing funds to stabilize their economies.

2014年7月13日-21日中國國家主席習近平到巴西參加金磚國家領導人第六次高峰會議與訪問拉丁美洲。他與國家領導人巴西總統羅塞夫、俄羅斯總統普欽、印度總理莫迪、南非總統祖馬于巴西福塔萊薩和巴西利亞兩地，共同宣布推動「金磚國家開發銀行」和「應急儲備基金」之合作，前者致力於資助金磚五國與開發中國家所需之基礎建設，後者用於應對金融危機之機制，向陷入經濟危機的國家，提供經濟穩定基金。

The headquarter of BRICS new development bank established in Shanghai

**金磚五國成立新開發銀行
總部設在中國上海**



新開發銀行 挑戰世銀、IMF

新開發銀行 (NDB)

總部	中國上海
成立時間	2014年7月巴西高峰會通過
會員國	中國、印度、巴西、俄羅斯與南非
資本	初期500億美元，最終可達1000億美元
最大出資國	五國均攤
總裁	首任總裁由印度人擔任
成立宗旨	融通金磚五國與新興國家的基礎建設

世界銀行 (World Bank)

總部	美國華盛頓
成立時間	1944年的布雷頓森林會議通過，1946年6月正式運行
會員國	聯合國全部187個會員國
資本	到2011年止，提供的貸款金額超過5000億美元
最大出資國	美國
總裁	歷屆皆由美國人擔任，目前是金墾
成立宗旨	最初使命是協助二次大戰的殘破國家重建，如今則是「終結極度貧困，促進共享繁榮」

亞洲開發銀行 (ADB)

總部	菲律賓馬尼拉
成立時間	1965年
會員國	目前有67會員國，亞太國家占48個，其餘來自北美與歐洲
資本	創立時股本10億美元，1996年時擴至501億美元
最大出資國	日本和美國
總裁	歷屆總裁都是日本人，目前是中尾武彥
成立宗旨	協助亞太開發中國家籌集經濟發展資金，減少貧困



▲ 中共國家主席習近平(右二)十五日在巴西福塔萊薩出席金磚國家領導人第六次會晤，在開幕式上與金磚五國領導人合影。(新華社)

國際貨幣基金(IMF)

總部	美國華盛頓
成立時間	1945年12月
會員國	聯合國的187個會員國
主要成員國的提款權(SDR)比率	美國17.69%，日本6.56%，德國6.12%，法國與英國各4.51%，中國大陸4%
總裁	法國的拉加德
成立宗旨	監督貨幣匯率 and 各國貿易情況，提供技術和資金協助，確保全球金融制度順利運作

應急準備基金(CRA)

成立時間	2014年7月提出，成立時間未知
會員國	中國、印度、巴西、俄羅斯與南非
出資比率	中國410億美元，印度、巴西與俄羅斯三國各180億美元，南非50億美元，合計1000億美元
總裁	未知
成立宗旨	因應金融與外匯危機的衝擊

資料來源／綜合外電 製表／編譯組

聯合報

The five leaders of Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa announced a declaration to establish a New Development Bank (NDB) of 100 billion USDs in Fortaleza on 15 July 2014. The objective is to assist for funding the infrastructure of BRICS countries and other developing countries which must be approved by five members of BRICS. It challenges the competition of USD and EURZONE for dominating the world for 70 years. Each member of BRICS contributes 10 billion USDs, 50 billion total, in the preliminary process, and will expand to 100 billion ultimately.

金磚五國 (BRICS) 是由中國、巴西、俄羅斯、印度及南非組成，這五國領袖 2014 年 7 月 15 日在巴西東北部城市「佛塔雷薩」舉行高峰會，隨後五國領袖發表聯合聲明，宣布成立一個價值一千億美元的新開發銀行，成立的主旨，在於融通金磚五國與其他新興國家的基礎建設方案，仍需獲得五國國會通過，核准程序可能歷時數年。挑戰美元為主、歐美主導七十年的全球金融體系。巴西、俄羅斯、印度、中國與南非對新銀行各出資一百億美元，初步共集資五百億美元，最後將擴充到一千億美元。

The funds of the NDB are contributed evenly by five countries and the headquarter of NDB is established in Shanghai, the President of NDB is alternated by five countries. In addition to World Bank and International Monetary Fund, the NDB will provide BRICS and other developing countries for funding resources, which directly affect the international finance and produce more power to handle the policies. Besides NDB, BRICS also establishes Contingent Reserve

Arrangement (CRA) which is similar to IMF. China contributed the highest monetary 41 billion USDs, Brazil, India and Russia contributed 10.8 billion each, and South Africa contributed 5 billion. The highest withdrawn monetary is different for each country. China could withdraw not more than 5% of contribution, about 20.5 billion, and Brazil, India, Russia could withdraw 10.8 billion and South Africa could withdraw 10 billion.

銀行資金由五國平均分攤，總部設在中國「上海」，銀行總裁由五國輪值，任期五年，第一任總裁來自印度。NDB成立後，將在世界銀行與國際貨幣基金（IMF）之外，為金磚五國與其他新興國家提供籌資的替代來源，讓這五國對直接影響國計民生的融通決策，有更大掌控權。除新開發銀行，金磚五國還決定設立一個仿效IMF的「應急儲備基金」（CRA），初期資本一千億美元，中國出資四百一十億美元最高，巴西、印度和俄羅斯各出一百八十億美元，南非五十億美元。最高提款額依各國情況不一，中國不得高於出資金額的五成，也就是二〇五億美元；巴西、印度與俄羅斯可提取相當於挹注金額的款項；南非則可提取較挹注金額多一倍的款項，亦即一百億美元。

The organization of NDB is similar to the organization of World Bank. NDB has annual executive meeting to discuss major and important issues and to determine policies. Usual business and policies are handled by the board of directors, and management and conveyance are handled by managers. Since China has gained the right of establishing the headquarter in Shanghai, and a few important positions are shared by other countries. The first president is nominated by India, and chair of CEOs is nominated by Russia, and chair of BODs is nominated by Brazil. According to the analysis of New York Times, USA affects global economy through World Bank and IMF. China holds 70% of BRICS assets, and its government looks into big issues and tries to be in a low position. The declaration asserts that NDB is to improve the cooperation of five BRICS countries, to assist developing countries to prevent the shortage of funds, and to obtain sufficient funds to develop infrastructure, and to promote stable developments of regional finances.

「新開發銀行」組織比照世界銀行，每年召開一次的理事會會議通過重大決策，日常決策由董事會決定，管理營運由行長負責。由於大陸已爭取到銀行總部設在上海，因此幾個要職由其他國家平分，首任行長由印度提名，理事會主席由俄羅斯提名，董事會主席則是巴西提名。紐約時報分析，美國透過世界銀行與國際貨幣基金等機構影響全球經濟，國民生產毛額（GNP）占金磚五國七成的中國大陸，以大局為重，對其他會員國力求低調。聲明中指出，新開發銀行是為加強五國間的合作，協助發展中國家免於遭到短期資金壓力，並有足夠的貸款可以進行基礎建設，以促進區域性的金融穩定發展。

The establishment of this NDB is balanced with WB and IMF since they both mostly work for USA and European countries, not sufficient for representative rights from developing countries. Therefore, WB and IMF are criticized by many people. Earlier, people thought the competition of BRICS is more than cooperation, and doubt whether NDB could be established or not. However, five BRICS countries gave up their differences and completed the signatures of the declaration, firmly assured to cooperate together and to share the friendly partnerships, and to promote their major roles and great impacts in the international political and economic stages.

這個新開發銀行的成立主要是與「世界銀行」及「國際貨幣基金」分庭抗禮；長期以來，「世銀」及「國際貨幣基金」被認為過於以歐美為中心，並沒有讓發展中國家有足夠的表決權，因而倍遭詬病。稍早前，各方耳語不斷，認為金磚五國間的關係競爭大於合作，能否成立新開發銀行備受質疑，但顯然金磚五國捐棄政治及經濟歧見，完成協議的簽署，決心建立更緊密的經濟夥伴關係，在全球舞台上爭取更大的板塊。

Chinese President Xi Jinping flew to Brazil to pass through Greece, which was Xi's second visit there within a month. Greek President purposely flew to Rhode Island to shake hands with him. After visiting Greece, Xi participated the 6th BRICS summit, and visited Brazil, Argentina, Venezuela and Cuba. China and Brazil have signed bilateral trade agreements over 90.2 billion USDs.

中國國家主席習近平的拉丁美洲之旅，過境希臘，說是路過，倒不如說是專程經過，希臘總統也專程從雅典飛羅德島，和習近平握手，這是中國 1 個月之內兩度訪希臘。在希臘之後，習近平深入拉丁美洲參加金磚五國第高峰會議，依序訪問巴西、阿根廷、委內瑞拉，最後一站古巴，其中和巴西的雙邊貿易超過 902 億。

The bilateral trades between China and Latin America about 12.6 billion USDs in 2000. After 6 years, the bilateral trades between both sides reached over 100 billion USDs in 2007. In 2013, the bilateral trades between both sides arrived at 261.6 billion USDs, which increased 30% each year. In 2013, China was the top export country of Brazil, and it increased 11.6%. However, Brazil exported USA decreased 7.7%. Moreover, Brazil depends on China's electricity about 30%, which is twice as much as USA. China and Brazil are two top trade partners each other, and China is the top export and import country of Brazil. China is the second largest partner of Latin America next to USA. President Xi was interviewed by the media of Latin America, and he said, "We are engaged to improve to manage international system, and to expand the representative and speaking right of developing countries." However, China confronts a new challenge from outside that BRICS bank is established in Shanghai which may benefit China more than other countries. China recently has expanded military expenses in Southern Sea and Eastern Sea, which cause unease in Asia and USA.

中國和拉丁美洲雙邊貿易額，2000 年只有 126 億美元，在 2007 年突破千億，不過 6 年時間，2013 年雙邊貿易額再翻倍，高達 2616 億美元，每年平均以 30% 的速度增長。2013 年一年巴西出口貿易排行冠軍就是中國，年增率+11.6%，反而是出口美國的貨物出現-7.7%，而巴西仰賴進口的電機產品，大陸佔了將近 30%，足足是美國的 2 倍量，兩國互為第一大貿易夥伴，中國更是巴西第一大出口目的地及第一大進口來源國，中國與拉丁美洲的雙邊貿易，是繼美國之後的第 2 大貿易夥伴。習近平在接受南美媒體採訪的時候說：「將致力於完善治理的國際體系和主動推動擴大發展中國家在國際事務的代表性和發言權。」但是中國面臨外界對於其動機的深刻懷疑，金磚五國其他成員也擔憂中國可能劫持新銀行服務於自己的利益。中國在南海和東海的主權爭奪行動以及增強的軍事實力，已經攪動地區不安並造成華盛頓的擔憂。

President Xi visited Brazil and had a historic meeting with 11 leaders of Latin and Caribbean countries. The topic of his speech was "Hand-in hand cooperation to establish future common grounds and benefits." The leaders of China and Latin America made an announcement that China and Latin America will establish a new partnership with mutual benefit and respect. They will establish China-Latin America forum, and a meeting of ministers will be held in Beijing soon. This meeting and the announcement made are the beginning of historic cooperation between China and Latin America. The integration of China, Latin America and Caribbean countries and their developments of cooperations are their common wishes. These are the great outcomes of President Xi's visit to Latin America, which will promote their relationship and cooperation, and contribute to the world peace, stability and advance.

习近平在访问巴西期间与拉美加勒比 11 国领导人举行了历史性的会晤，习主席发表题为《努力构建携手共进的命运共同体》的主旨讲话，中拉领导人发表联合声明，共同宣布中拉建立平等互利、共同发展的全面合作伙伴关系；共同宣布正式成立中国—拉丁共同体论坛，并尽早在北京举行首届部长级会议。这次会晤和所通过的声明表示，中拉关系已站在新的历史起点上，开始了中拉整体合作的新阶段。建立中国—拉丁共同体论坛和推动中拉整体合作，是中国同拉美和加勒比国家的共同愿望，是习主席这次拉美之行的重大成果，不仅将提高中拉关系水平，而且为推动南美合作，促进地区和世界和平、稳定、发展做出积极贡献。

President Xi's visited Brazil, Argentina, Venezuela and Cuba in Latin America such that the relationships among them reached a new stage. When Xi visited Brazil, he said, "China and Brazil have become the family of same fortune and fate." China and Brazil will cooperate together with long-term insight, firm confidence, open mind and high development such that they will promote a great partnership in the world stage. When Xi visited Argentina and Venezuela, he promoted the "strategic partners" into "comprehensive strategic partners." In Cuba, President Xi and President Castrol met, and discussed three firm relationship: friendly relationship, developing win-win cooperation, and reformed partnership.

习主席对拉美四国的访问，使中国与这四国的双边关系提升到一个新的水平。习近平在访问巴西时，强调中巴“两国已经成为命运共同体”，要“承前启后，继往开来，以更加长远的眼光、更加宽广的胸怀、更加坚定的信心，在更高水平、更宽领域、更大舞台上推进中巴全面战略伙伴关系。”在访问阿根廷、委内瑞拉期间，习主席与两国领导人一起把双边关系从原来的“战略伙伴关系”提升为“全面战略伙伴关系”。在古巴，习主席在与劳尔·卡斯特罗会谈时，强调对发展中古关系要“三个坚持”：“我们要坚定不移深化肝胆相照的友谊，坚定不移开展互利双赢的合作，坚定不移做改革发展的伙伴。”

President Xi's visit to Brazil, Argentina, Venezuela and Cuba in Latin America has further developed the relationship among them. When Xi met with the leaders of Latin America, he proposed the goals and objectives of the great 1+3+6 model. "1" means a great and comprehensive plan. "3" means three engines - trade, investment and financial cooperation, to promote concrete and extensive relationship, and the trade volume of China and Latin America will reach 250 billion in ten years. "6" means six aspects - energy resource, infrastructure, agriculture, scientific and technical development, constructions, information technology. The concentration areas are to promote the connectivity of China and Latin American, and to deepen the cooperation. Xi announced that China will initially implement 10 billion USDs for the loan of infrastructure, will increase it to 20 billion. China will also corporate beneficial monetary 10 billion to the countries in Lain America and Caribbean countries, and will promise to provide the allowance 5 billion for the cooperative funds.

习主席的访问，将进一步推动中国与拉美四国以及中国与拉美的经贸关系的发展。习主席在中拉领导人会晤时，提出了一个发展中拉经贸关系的宏伟计划和目标。习主席倡议中拉双方共同构建“1+3+6”合作新框架，“1”就是“一个规划”，即制定《中国与拉美和加勒比国家合作规划（2015—2019）》；“3”就是“三大引擎”，即以贸易、投资、金融合作为动力，推动中拉务实合作全面发展。力争实现 10 年内中拉贸易规模达到 5000 亿美元。力争实现 10 年内对拉美投资存量达到 2500 亿美元。“6”就是“六大领域”，即以能源资源、基础设施建设、农业、制造业、科技创新、信息技术为合作重点，推进中拉产业对接，推动中拉互利合作深入发展。习主席宣布，中方将正式实施 100 亿美元中

拉基础设施专项贷款，并在这一基础上将专项贷款额度增至 200 亿美元。中方还将向拉美和加勒比国家提供 100 亿美元的优惠性质贷款，全面启动中拉合作基金并承诺出资 50 亿美元。

During President Xi's visit in Latin America, China, Brazil and Peru have developed railways between Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean, and have signed over 100 trade documents including 56 items with Brazil, 20 items with Argentina, and 16 items with Venezuela, and 29 items with Cuba. These trade documents involve energy, mine resources, new energy, infrastructure, agriculture, finance, high technology, human and cultural exchanges, etc. The accomplishments of these trade agreements will strongly promote the trade developments of China and Latin America. President Xi's visit to Latin America and the first meeting with the leaders of Latin America were a great dialogue between China and Latin America, which created a milestone stage between them. It will promote the developments of China and Latin America to a further stage of partnership.

习主席在访问期间，中国政府与巴西和秘鲁三国就开展连接大西洋和太平洋的两洋铁路合作共同发表了声明；中国政府与四国政府共签署了 100 多项合作文件，其中与巴西签署了 56 项，与阿根廷 20 项，与委内瑞拉 16 项，与古巴 29 项。这些合作文件包括了能源、矿业、新能源、基础设施、农业、贸易、金融、高科技、人文交流等各个方面，有不少是中国与四国规模巨大的合作项目。这些项目的落实和实施，将有力地推动中拉经贸关系的发展。习近平主席这次拉美四国之访，以及在巴西举行的首次中拉领导人会晤，是中拉关系中的一件大事，具有里程碑意义，必将有力推动中国和拉美四国及中拉关系在更高水平向前发展。

Notes: The acronym "BRICs" was initially formulated in 2001 by economist Jim O'Neill, of Goldman Sachs, in a report on growth prospects for the economies of Brazil, Russia, India and China – which together represented a significant share of the world's production and population. In a report of Jim O'Neill in 2003, he predicted that the economies of four BRIC would reshape the global economies, and surpass the economies of Europe including Britain, Germany, France, Spain Italy, and USA and Japan in 2050. In 2011, South Africa was included such that BRIC became BRICS. Nowadays, the economic growth of five BRICS countries has contributed the world growth over 50%, and their economies possess about 21% of world's economies.

附註：金磚五國人口和國土面積在全球佔有重要份額，並且是世界經濟增長的主要動力之一。2001 年，美國高盛公司首席經濟師吉姆·奧尼爾（Jim O'Neill）首次提出「金磚四國」這一概念，來自這四個國家的英文國名開頭字母所組成的詞 BRIC，指巴西（Brazil）、俄羅斯（Russia）、印度（India）和中國（China），其發音類似英文的「磚塊」（brick）一詞。2003 年，奧尼爾在一份題為《與「金磚四國」一起夢想》的研究報告中預測，到 2050 年，世界經濟格局將重新洗牌，「金磚四國」將超越包括英國、法國、意大利、德國在內的西方發達國家，與美國、日本一起躋身全球新的六大經濟體。高盛這份報告出台後，中國、印度、俄羅斯和巴西作為新興市場國家受到世界廣泛關注，「金磚四國」這一概念由此風靡全球。另外，金磚四國的概念，有時也用來定義謠傳中的這四國在 2002 年所簽署的關於貿易與合作的協定。實際上，由於高盛該份研究報告被廣為接受，金磚四國的概念被廣泛的用來定義這四個國家所組成的一個市場，甚至更一般的用來定義所有新興的工業國家。2010 年 12 月 23 日，南非作為正式成員加入該合作機制，合稱金磚五國。金磚 5 國對全球經濟增長貢獻高達一半以上，在全世界的經濟總量也佔有 21%。

References: 1. The Website of BRICS. 2. 聯合報. 3. 中廣新聞. 4. 路透通訊社. 5. 中國新聞社.

The APEC Summit in Beijing and the 4th CICA Summit in Shanghai in 2014

2014 年北京亞太經合峰會 與上海亞信峰會

Hope

厚朴

The APEC summit 2014 in Beijing

2014 年北京亞太經合峰會

The Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC) CEO summit was held in November 8-10, 2014 in Beijing. As an important business event during the APEC Leaders' Week (Nov. 5-11), this summit was the premier platform for the APEC economic leaders and business executives to discuss Asia-Pacific economic issues and promote regional trade, investment and cooperation. There were 21 leaders of countries convened in Beijing during the APEC leaders' week. It was the most influential and high-level business event in the Asia-Pacific region.

2014 年中國的一大峰會---亞太經合組織 (APEC) 工商領導人峰會于 11 月 8-10 日在北京舉行。APEC 工商領導人峰會是“APEC 領導人周”(11 月 5-11 日)期間的重要活動，是亞太地區最具影響力的工商界會議。本屆亞太經合峰會共有 21 位國家元首出席並發表演講或參與對話討論，此峰會已成為亞太及周邊地區領導人和商界領袖最高級別的對話交流平台。

Initiated in 1996, the APEC CEO summit is the Asia-Pacific's premier business event, drawing economic leaders and senior business figures from the region and beyond. China served as the host of APEC 2014 for the second time, since APEC 2001 in Shanghai. The theme of the APEC CEO summit 2014 was “New Vision for Asia-Pacific: Creativity, Connectivity, Integration, and Prosperity.” Under this theme, about 1500 APEC Economic leaders and CEOs gathered at the summit in Beijing, as well as 21 countries' leaders including the United States President Obama, Canadian Prime Minister Harper, the Japanese Prime Minister Shinzo Abe, President Aquino of Philippines and others. They discussed the main topics including the development of the Asia-Pacific economy by sharing views on advancing regional economic integration, promoting innovative development, economic reform and growth, and strengthening comprehensive connectivity and infrastructure development, etc. *Note 2*

起源於 1996 年的 APEC 峰會是亞太地區首屈一指的商業活動，吸引着來自該地區及以外地區的企業高管和資深工商界人士參加。2014 年中國擔任 APEC 東道主，是中國繼 2001 年上海後再次主辦 APEC 峰會。本屆會議主題為“亞太新願景：創新、互聯、融合、繁榮”。在這個主題下，峰會吸引了來自亞太地區的 1500 位工商界領袖與會，共有 21 位 APEC 經濟體領導人出席，包括美国总统奥巴马，加拿大總理哈珀，日本首相安倍晉三和菲律賓總統阿基諾等，與全球企業高管一起探討世界經濟的現狀和發展、區域經濟一體化、促進創新發展，推動經濟改革與增長以及加強全方位基礎設施和互聯互通建設等重要議題。

Chinese President Xi Jinping delivered a keynote speech at the opening ceremony of the 2014 APEC CEO summit in Beijing, Nov 9, 2014. He called for efforts to create and fulfill an Asia-Pacific dream, and stated that China's economy would bring huge opportunities and benefits to the region and the world. The Asia-Pacific has a strong impetus for development with a bright future in the world, but the region now faces “at a crossroad.” After listing several

challenges in the region, Xi said, “The development prospect of our region hinges on the decisions and actions that we take today. We have a great task to create and fulfill an Asia-Pacific dream for our people in the region.” *Note 3*

中國國家主席習近平出席開幕式並發表題為《謀求持久發展共築亞太夢想》的主旨演講，強調中國願意同本地區各國攜手創造和實現亞太美好夢想，中國發展將給亞太和世界帶來巨大機會和利益。習近平指出，亞太地區在世界格局中的地位不斷上升，發展動力強勁，未來前景光明，但是该地区当前亦处于“十字路口”。在列举了一系列亚太面临的挑战之后，他说：“亞太發展前景取決於今天的決斷和行動。我們有責任為本地區人民創造和實現亞太夢想。”

When elaborating on the idea, President Xi said that the dream is about acting in the spirit of the Asia-Pacific community and a sense of shared destinies, following the trend of peace, development and mutually beneficial cooperation, and jointly working for the prosperity and progress of the region. He added that the dream is about staying ahead of global development and making greater contribution to the well-being of mankind. The dream is also about having more economic vibrancy, free trade and investment facilitation, better roads, and closer people-to-people exchanges. Moreover, Xi stated that the dream is about ensuring greater security and prosperity for the people and giving children a better environment to grow, work and live. To realize the Asia-Pacific dream, the region should make efforts to forge a partnership of mutual trust, inclusiveness and win-win cooperation, and jointly building an open economy. In addition, the region's economies need to explore new drivers for growth and draw a blueprint for comprehensive connectivity.

這個夢想，就是堅持亞太大家庭精神和命運共同體意識，共同致力於亞太繁榮進步；就是繼續引領世界發展大勢，為人類福祉作出更大貢獻；就是讓經濟更有活力，貿易更加自由，投資更加便利，道路更加通暢，人與人交往更加密切；就是讓人民過上更加安寧富足的生活。我們要為實現這一目標作出更大努力。我們要共同建設互信、包容、合作、共贏的亞太夥伴關係，攜手打造開放型亞太經濟格局，不斷發掘經濟增長新動力，精心勾畫全方位互聯互通藍圖。

APEC 2014 in Beijing has been the most popular international conference held in China so far, and China has become the focus of world's attention by then. As the second largest economy in the world, China's hosting this APEC was spectacular and magnificent, which impressed world people for their power and decisive action. [Chinese harvested at least 8 dividends](#) during the APEC week, which would benefit China for many years in the future.

北京 APEC 峰会可以說是中國迄今為止舉辦的最受世界矚目的一次國際會議。作為世界第二大經濟體，中國由此展現出的實力、決策力和動員力，確實讓人嘆為觀止。北京 APEC 帶給中國至少八大紅利，相信會影響中國未來很多年。

The first dividend: China showed the world its dominance. As the host of APEC summit, China controlled the agenda-settings decisively and firmly. Either the negotiating on the FTAAP (Free Trade Area of the Asia-Pacific) or [giving the final decision](#) on the connectivity, it actually showed the leadership and authority of China. As for making any international rules in the future, Chinese would be heard by more and more people in the world.

紅利一，展現中國主導權。借東道主之便，讓中國牢牢掌控議程設置。在亞太自貿區上的博弈，在互聯互通上的拍板，其實展現的是中國的領導力和主導權。在以後的國際規則制定上，中國話會越來越被人聽。

The second dividend: China won the connectivity, which related to the long-term development of China's strategy. Chinese could transfer its surplus production capacity, and output its goods, services, rules by large-scale investing on the infrastructure overseas, and thus to build up a strategic passage for China from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and thus to direct all countries along "Belt and Road" -----"the Silk Road Economic Belt" and "the 21st Century Maritime Silk Road"----- into the orbit of China's development. The better the connectivity is, the more partners China owns, and the better the partnership works, just like Chinese old saying, "more friends, and more opportunities."

红利二，互聯互通獲追捧。這關係到中國長遠發展的戰略謀劃。大規模投資海外基礎設施，中國由此可轉移剩餘產能，輸出商品、服務、規則等，從而打通從太平洋到大西洋的戰略通道，將“一帶一路”——即“丝绸之路经济带”和“21世纪海上丝绸之路”——的國家納入中國發展軌道。互聯互通得越好，中國的伙伴就越多也表現得越好，正如中國俗話說的，“朋友多了路好走”。

The third dividend: APEC officially started the FTAAP. Although the United States had different opinions, ----- FTAAP was considered as the alternatives of TPP (Trans-Pacific Strategic Economic Partnership Agreement) advocated by President Obama, since TPP excluded China, and analysts believed that US tried to weaken the growing influence of China in the Asia-Pacific area undoubtedly by this way. -----With the active promotion of China, many countries (including Japan) were still interested in it, and finally the FTAAP roadmap was approved by the APEC summit. In Xi's words, "this is a historic step forward" due to its enormous economic benefits. China could promote a lot of diplomatic and trade policies in the name of FTAAP from now on.

红利三，啟動亞太自貿區。雖然美國有些不同看法，——亞太自由貿易區被視為美國總統奧巴馬倡導的跨太平洋戰略經濟夥伴協定（TPP）的替代品，因為該協定並不包括中國。分析人士認為，美國把中國排除在 TPP 之外無疑是想削弱中國在亞太地區日益增強的影響力。——但在中國強力推動下，有不少國家（包括日本）對此很感興趣，這次 APEC 峰會還是批准了自貿區路線圖。用習的話說，“這是歷史性的一步”，因為其經濟收益巨大。以後很多外交經貿決策，中國都可以亞太自貿區名義推進。

The fourth dividend: China and the United States have controlled their differences. Since President Obama took power, Sino-US relationship had experienced difficulties during the past few years frequently. Chinese President Xi Jinping, with his unique diplomatic style, welcomed President Obama to Beijing APEC. The two leaders shook hands and kept their contradiction not too big to control; even if their smiles could not melt away enemies. As long as the Sino-US relations won't turn to worse, it would be a strategic opportunity for China.

红利四，中美管控住分歧。奧巴馬上台後，中美關係兩三年來經歷了風風雨雨。習近平用他的外交風格，歡迎奧巴馬來 APEC 峰會，中美領袖握手言歡，不能講一笑泯恩仇，但至少矛盾不至於大到失控狀態。而中美關係只要不急劇惡化，對中國來說就是戰略機遇。

The fifth dividend: Russia offered China a great gift. That was the contract just signed between Sino-Russia on 30 billion cubic meters of natural gas delivered to west China. The crisis in Ukraine made Russia to seek the help of China. Xi and Putin had a tacit understanding. Chinese expect to receive more gifts from Russian in the future because they knew Russians need their helps against the West.

紅利五，俄羅斯送來大禮。這次的禮物就是剛簽訂的西部 300 億立方米的天然氣。烏克蘭危機讓俄羅斯求助於中國。習近平和普京默契相投，俄羅斯要咬緊牙關對抗西方，以後應該還有更多禮物送上門來。

The sixth dividend: Sino-Japan relation melted the ice down. Japanese Prime Minister Abe came to Beijing to meet Xi finally, and signed the Sino-Japan Four Agreements, with his anti attitude having softened. Sino-Japan relation has passed the worst stage. As long as Japan no longer provocative deliberately, bilateral relationship would return to normal track gradually. Although there are possibilities of bilateral conflicts appeared again sometime, it is unlikely to see the outbreak of Sino-Japan war. Anyway, it is a good sign either for China or for Japan.

紅利六，中日關係破冰了。日本首相安倍終於來了北京見了習主席，達成了中日四項共識，安倍的反華態度也有了軟化。中日關係已經度過了最糟糕的一個階段，只要日本不再刻意挑釁，兩國關係會慢慢恢復正常。雖然中日仍可能會有衝突時刻，但戰爭應該打不起來了。這對日本對中國都是一件好事。

The seventh dividend: China succeeded in negotiation with South Korea on Free Trade Area. South Korean President Park Geun-hye came to Beijing to meet Xi, and finally accomplished the negotiation on FTA. So far, it is China's largest free trade area that owns the widest coverage areas and involves the highest trade volume between China and other counties. China has overtaken the US as South Korea's largest trading partner, and the trade volume between China and Australia also has exceeded that of the US-Australia. While the negotiation between China and Australia was still in progress, South Korea has submitted their sincerity and gift, which also form a strategic pressure to Japan and Taiwan.

紅利七，中韓自貿談判成功。韓國總統朴槿惠會見了習近平並完成了兩國自貿談判。這是中國迄今為止對外商談的覆蓋領域最廣、涉及國別貿易額最大的自貿區。中國已經取代美國成為韓國最大的貿易夥伴，中國與澳大利亞的貿易額也超過了美澳之間的貿易額。中國和澳大利亞談判還在繼續，但韓國已經呈上誠意大禮，這也對日本和台灣地區構成了戰略壓力。

The eighth dividend: China issued Beijing Anti-corruption Declaration. Since there were many Chinese corruption officials fled abroad, currently China vigorously promotes the Asia-Pacific anti-corruption cooperation, the establishment of APEC anti-corruption law enforcement cooperation network on fugitives, stolen goods and other law enforcement cooperation and reaches important consensus. In this way, China could show their nets of justice works and deter officials from potential corruption. Specific actions followed with the Beijing Anti-corruption Declaration, and there have come the bad news for Chinese corrupt officials. *Note 4*

紅利八，北京反腐敗宣言出台。鑒於中國有很多貪官出逃海外，中國目前正在大力推進亞太反腐敗合作，對逃犯建立 APEC 反腐敗執法合作網絡，贓物及其他執法合作，並達成重要共識。這既顯示法網恢恢，更震懾潛在的貪腐。北京反腐宣言後是一系列具體的行動，中國貪官們的噩耗來了。

APEC informal summit ended in November 11, 2014. Xi Jinping said in his closing speech, the meeting adopted the "Beijing Platform" and "Asia-Pacific Partnership Statement," a clear direction of APEC development, objectives, and initiatives. When Xi attended APEC informal summit press conference in the afternoon, he pointed out that Beijing APEC decided to implement the global value chain in the field of supply chain collaboration initiatives. Increase investment in capacity building to help all members, especially developing countries to better integrate into regional economic integration, and achieve common development. APEC regional

economic integration should continue to play a leading role in advancing meanwhile maintains strong growth driving force. International community gave Xi's speech a positive evaluation. They believe that his lecture depicts a new vision for the development of the Asia-Pacific, which is helpful for the Asia-Pacific economies to deal with challenges and create a better future by coordination. *Note 5*

11月11日，2014年亞太經合組織領導人非正式會議落下帷幕，習近平在致閉幕詞時說，會議通過了《北京綱領》和《亞太夥伴關係聲明》，明確了亞太經合的發展方向、目標、舉措。在11日下午舉行的APCE領導人非正式會議記者招待會上，習近平指出，APEC峰會決定實施供應鏈協同行動的領域的全球價值鏈。加大投入，能力建設，幫助所有成員，特別是發展中成員，以更好地融入區域經濟一體化，實現共同發展。APEC區域經濟一體化在保持強勁的增長動力的同時，應繼續推進發揮主導作用。國際社會積極評價，認為習主席的演講描繪了亞太發展的新願景，有助於亞太各經濟體應對挑戰、攜手共創亞太美好未來。

However, there were also some negative comments on Beijing APEC summit, like "it was just a drama of money diplomacy." For example, [William Pesek](#) published an article on *Bloomberg view* on Nov. 10, 2014, titled "Xi's Dream Calls for Love, Not Money," and said, Xi Jinping wants to enchant the [entire Asia region](#) ----- and is dangling 1.25 trillion to make sure he does. China's development will bring huge opportunities and benefits to the Asia-Pacific and the world, President Xi told business leaders in Beijing on Sunday. "We are willing to work with others to realize the Asia-Pacific Dream." So far, though, it seems Xi only wants to pay the region to realize that China has the supports of Asia's countries such that America and Japan can't afford. "That 1.25 trillion is the total in outbound investments China plans to make over the next 10 years. Beijing is also lavishing 40 billion to create the Silk Road to bolster trade with Europe. A 50 billion [infrastructure fund](#) will make the World Bank and Asian Development Bank look like archaic vestiges of a bygone geopolitical age. China's Free Trade Area of the Asia-Pacific is to rival the U.S.-led Trans-Pacific Partnership." *Note 6*

然而也有一些負面評論，稱 [APEC 峰會](#) “只是一齣金元外交大戲”，例如美國彭博新聞社發表評論員威廉·佩希克的文章《習的夢呼喚的是愛，而不是金錢》說，習近平現在想要把這個夢想推向整個亞洲，其堅強後盾就是中國在未來10年將拿出的12500億美元的對外投資。習近平對出席北京APEC峰會的亞太商界領袖說：“中國的發展將給亞太地區和世界帶來巨大的機會，我們願意與其他國家合作，共同實現亞太夢。”不過習近平似乎只是想用錢鋪路，讓亞太地區意識到中國可以在美國和日本都無法承擔的情況下獲得亞洲的支持。中國計劃在未來10年對外投資12500億美元。北京還為重建絲綢之路，以增強與歐洲的貿易提供400億美元。除此以外，中國還為亞洲基礎設施投資銀行投資500億美元，使世界銀行和亞洲開發銀行相形見绌。而中國提出的FTAAP更是針對美國倡導的TPP。

The 4th CICA summit 2014 in Shanghai

2014年上海亞信峰會

The 4th Conference on Interaction and Confidence Building Measure in Asia (CICA) was held in Shanghai, May 20-21, 2014, to seek common, comprehensive, cooperative and sustained security, host China's state-owned Xinhua News Agency reported. Chinese President Xi Jinping warmly welcomed the leaders of all countries and their delegates including 26

member countries and 11 observers before the CICA. President Xi delivered a keynote speech, and proposed that “we have zero tolerance to terrorism, separation and extremism.” *Note 1*

2014年5月20至21日第四屆亞信峰會於上海舉行，共有26個成員國和11個觀察國參加。據東道主中國的官方新華社報導，峰會旨在尋求共識，理解，合作和可持續的安全事務。在亞信峰會前中國國家主席習近平熱誠歡迎各成員國的領袖們和代表們。習近平在亞信峰會主旨講話中，提出“對恐怖主義、分裂主義、極端主義這‘三股勢力’，我們必須採取零容忍態度。”

The two-day Shanghai CICA summit drew dignitaries from 47 countries or international organizations, including Kuwaiti Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Defense Sheikh Khaled Al-Jarrah Al-Sabah. Some 11 foreign leaders of countries, such as Russian President Vladimir Putin and Iranian President Hassan Rouhani, also attended.

為期兩天的上海亞信峰會吸引了來自47個國家或國際組織的貴賓，包括科威特副首相兼國防大臣賈拉·薩巴赫，還有俄羅斯總統普京和伊朗總統哈桑·魯哈尼等11個國家元首也出席了會議。

In the declaration issued at the 4th summit of the CICA held in Shanghai, the members agreed that, in the context of globalization, security has become an all-encompassing concept with increasingly prominent transnational, comprehensive and interconnected features, according to the report. “The countries in the region share common interests and security concerns,” the declaration said, adding that no country can stay immune in the face of security problems. The CICA members reiterated their collective desires to carry forward the spirit of solidarity, cooperation and mutual assistance, respect each other's sovereignty, and seek common development and progress. They pledged that no state should strengthen its security at the expense of the security of other states, emphasizing that no state, group of states or organization can have pre-eminent responsibility for maintaining peace and stability.

在上海舉行的第四屆亞信會議發表的聲明中，成員國們一致認為，在全球化的背景下，伴隨着日益突出的跨國的，多方位的和相互聯繫的特點，安全已經成為一個包羅萬象的概念。聲明指出，“該地區的國家之間有著共同的利益和安全關切點，”任何國家在安全問題面前都不可回避。亞信成員國重申，他們期望發揚同舟共濟，合作互助的精神，相互尊重主權，謀求共同發展和進步的集體願望。他們承諾，任何國家都不應以犧牲其他國家的安全為代價來加強自己的安全，同時強調任何國家，國家集團或組織對維護世界和平與穩定都不擁有優先主導責任。

In a recent discussion with the officials of Xinjiang Autonomous Region, Xi proposed fighting terrorists with “a crushing blow”, and emphasizing must fight as earlier as possible against violent terrorist activities with an iron wrist. While anti-terrorism of Chinese government got the understanding and support of more and more countries and publics, some countries had cynical attitude to terrorist events taken place in China or targeted China. Such kind of double standards only helped the terrorism, and therefore went against the stream of international anti-terrorism cooperation. Terrorism is the common enemy of mankind, we need all nations' zero tolerance to terrorism and international cooperation against terrorism, in addition to China's zero tolerance to terrorism.

在不久前同新疆自治區幹部座談時，習近平更提出給予恐怖勢力“毀滅性打擊”，強調對暴恐活動，必須打早、打小、打苗頭，用鐵的手腕予以毀滅性打擊。中國反恐得到越來越多國家和輿論的理解和支持。個別國家對發生在中國和針對中國的暴恐事件的表態陰陽

怪氣，這種雙重標準只能助紂為虐，與國際反恐合作的大趨勢背道而馳。暴恐勢力是全人類的公敵，除了中國的零容忍，也需要國際上的零容忍和國際的反恐合作。

The CICA members also reaffirmed to respect each other's sovereignty, independence, territorial integrity and inviolability of internationally recognized borders, to refrain from the threat or use of force against territorial integrity or political independence of any state in any manner inconsistent with the principles and purposes of the UN Charter.

亞信成員國還重申尊重彼此的主權，獨立，領土完整和國際公認的邊界的不可侵犯性，禁止以任何違反聯合國憲章的原則和宗旨的方式，使用或威脅使用武力侵害任何國家的領土完整或政治獨立。

The CICA members expressed support to the orderly and peaceful conclusion of the ongoing developments in hotspot regions including the Middle East and North Africa, calling upon all parties concerned to implement all relevant UN resolutions to achieve comprehensive, lasting and just peace and security and stability in the Middle East by resuming negotiations. The member states also called upon the Afghan armed opposition groups to renounce violence severities with Al-Qaida and other terrorist organizations and respect the Constitution of Afghanistan. The CICA remains committed to supporting Afghanistan and working with the rest of the international community to contribute to Afghan and the region's security, stability, economic growth and development.

亞信成員國表示，支持包括中東和北非在內的熱點地區有序的，和平的持續發展，呼籲有關各方執行聯合國安理會所有有關決議，通過恢復談判，在中東地區實現全面，持久，公正的和平，安全與穩定。各成員國還呼籲阿富汗反對派武裝團體放棄暴力，斷絕與基地組織和其他恐怖組織的關係，尊重阿富汗憲法。亞信將繼續致力於支持阿富汗，並與國際社會一起努力促進阿富汗和該地區的安全，穩定，經濟增長和發展。

Meanwhile, the declaration underlined that diversification of energy sources and the routes of their delivery will increase competitiveness of international energy markets. In addition, the CICA members reaffirmed their commitment to non-proliferation, disarmament and peaceful uses of nuclear energy. Also, the CICA supports “the establishment of a Middle East Zone Free of Nuclear Weapons and All Weapons of Mass Destruction.” President Xi said after the summit, that if Asian countries speak with a common voice, they have the capacity to solve Asian problems themselves, according to Xinhua.

聲明同時強調，能源及其運輸路徑多樣化將增加國際能源市場的競爭力。此外，亞信成員重申其對核不擴散，裁軍和和平利用核能的承諾。而且亞信也支持“建立一個無核武器和大規模殺傷性武器的中東地區。”據新華社報道，峰會後習近平表示，如果亞洲國家共同發聲，他們自己一定有能力解決亞洲自己的問題。

CICA was established in 1992 as a forum for dialogue and consultations and promotion of confidence building measures among its members on security and development in Asia, a land of great diversity. It now has 26 member countries and 11 observers, as Qatar and Bangladesh, previously observers, became new members in May 19th. China holds the rotating CICA presidency from 2014 to 2016. Member states include Bahrain, China, Egypt, India, Iran, Iraq, Jordan, Pakistan, Palestine, Qatar, Russia, Turkey and the United Arab Emirates. 11 observer states include Japan and the US, as well as four organizations such as the League of Arab States.

在亞洲這片具有廣泛多樣性，差異性的土地上，亞信作為亞洲成員國之間對安全和發展問題展開對話和磋商，增進其建立信任措施的論壇，於1992年正式成立。它現在有26

個成員國和 11 個觀察員國。以前的觀察員國如卡塔爾和孟加拉國，已于 5 月 19 日成為了新的成員國。中國擔任 2014-2016 年 CICA 的輪值主席國，成員國包括巴林，中國，埃及，印度，伊朗，伊拉克，約旦，巴基斯坦，巴勒斯坦，卡塔爾，俄羅斯，土耳其和阿拉伯聯合酋長國等等。11 個觀察員國包括日本和美國，以及四個組織，譬如阿拉伯國家聯盟。

Conclusion

結論

In summary, the two great summits 2014 - APEC Beijing and CICA Shanghai, demonstrated the important role of China on the world stage in the contemporary era, and also reflected the leadership of China played in Asia-Pacific affairs, as well as reflected the general pattern of China's thinking and ambition. Just as President Xi said, "A great era calls for a great vision, which in turn requires a great wisdom," and "we should replace the 'winner-take-all' mentality with an all-win approach, and work together for great development and prosperity of our region." The summits also inspired our thinking of the long-term blueprint of China's development, such as the following questions: "Shall we continue to lead the world in creating a bright future, or shall we slow down only to be outperformed by others? Shall we deepen the integration process, or shall we let ourselves slip into a vortex of fragmentation? Shall we embrace openness and inclusiveness to work together for an Asia-Pacific century, or shall we cling to an outdated mindset until for the 21st century?" *Note 7*

總之，2014 年上海和北京的兩大峰會體現了中國在當今世界舞台上的重要地位，體現了中國在亞太事務上發揮著的領導作用，也反映了中國對當今時代大格局的思考和雄心。正如習主席所總結的：“大時代需要大格局，大格局需要大智慧”；“應該變贏者通吃為各方共贏，共同做大亞太發展的蛋糕。”兩大峰會也啟發了人們對中國未來發展藍圖的長遠思考。譬如：我們到底是繼續引領世界、創造美好未來，還是放慢腳步、等待被人超越？是深化一體化進程、還是陷入碎片化漩渦？是踐行開放、包容理念、共同開創亞太世紀，還是身體已進入 21 世紀而思維模式還停留在過去？

References:

1. 2014 年 5 月 21 日中國日報報導。http://www.chinadaily.com.cn/2014yaxinfenghui/2014-05/21/content_17531651.htm
2. Jiang Zengwei 姜增偉(2014 年 APEC 工商領導人峰會組委會主席, 中國國際貿易促進委員會會長): <http://www.2014apeccsummit.com/apecc/>
3. 2014 年 11 月 10 日新華社報導。<http://www.2014apeccsummit.com/apecc/news1/1721.jhtml>
4. <http://cpc.people.com.cn/pinglun/n/2014/1113/c78779-26015805.html>
5. 2014 年 11 月 10 日 人民網 <http://news.sina.com.cn/c/2014-11-10/150731122290.shtml>
6. William Pesek, 2014 年 11 月 10 日, <http://www.bloombergvew.com/articles/2014-11-10/xis-dream-calls-for-love-not-money>
7. 2014 年 11 月 11 日新華網報導。<http://news.sina.com.cn/c/2014-11-11/165631128052.shtml>

Introduction of Water Diversion from the South to the North in China

中國南水北調介紹

Yio Ju

攸居

南水北調是把中國長江流域豐盈的水資源抽調一部分送到華北和中國西北地區，從而改變中國南澇北旱和北方地區水資源嚴重短缺局面的重大戰略性工程，目的是促進中國南北經濟、社會與人口、[資源](#)、環境的協調發展。南水北調工程有東線、中線和西線三條調水線路，總投資額 5000 億元[人民幣](#)。此工程的規模和難度都超過[三峽工程](#)，工程已全面展開。領導機構為[國務院南水北調工程建設委員會](#)，辦公室設在[水利部南水北調規劃設計管理局](#)。

Water diversion from the south to north means to transfer part of the abundant water in the Yangtze River basin in the south to the north and northwest of China. It changes southern drought and flood, and benefits northern severe water shortages. This is a major strategic project aimed at promoting China's north-south economic, social and population, and environmental development. This diversion project has eastern, middle and western lines, with a total investment of 500 billion yuan. The size and difficulty of this project are more than the Three Gorges Project, which has been in full swing. The leading agency for Water Diversion Project Construction is the Committee of the State Council, the Ministry of Water Resources Management Office.

I. 實施南水北調的原因

I. The reason for water diversion from the south to the north

中國水資源短缺，人均水資源量為 2163 立方米，只有世界人均水平的 1/4，且時空分佈不均，南方水多，北方水少。黃淮海流域是我國水資源承載能力與經濟社會發展矛盾最為突出的地區，人均水資源量 462 立方米，僅為全國平均水平的 21%，其中京津兩市所在的海河流域人均水資源量僅為 292 立方米，不足全國平均水平的 1/7。黃淮海流域總人口 4.4 億，約占全國人口的 35%，[國內生產總值](#)約占全國的 35%，人口密度大，大中城市多，在中國經濟格局中占有重要地位，而水資源量僅占全國總量的 7.2%。由於長期乾旱缺水，這一地區有 2 億多人口不同程度存在飲水困難，700 多萬人長期飲用高氟水、苦鹹水，一批重大工業建設項目難以投資落產，制約了經濟社會的發展。由於不得不過度利用地表水、大量超采地下水，擠占農業及生態用水，造成地面下沉、海水入侵、生態惡化。黃淮海流域水污染嚴重的形勢進一步加劇了水資源的短缺。

China has water shortage problem, water resource per capita for 2163 cubic meters, only a quarter of the world average. It has the uneven water distribution, much more water in the south than the north. Huang-Huai River Basin water resources carry the capacity, and the economic and social development of China's most important region, per capita 462 cubic meters, only 21% of the national average. Haihe River Basin which is located in Beijing and Tianjin, only per capita for 292 cubic meters less than 1/7 of the national average. Huang-Huai River basin has total population 440 million, accounting for about 35% of the population, about 35% of the country's gross domestic product, population density, cities, etc. in China's economic structure,

but the amount of water accounting for 7.2% of the national total. Due to the long drought and water shortage, more than 200 million people have drinking water problem, more than 700 million long-term drinking fluoride water and brackish water. A number of major industrial construction projects limit the economic and social developments. Due to the excessive use of surface water, the over-exploitation of groundwater, agricultural and ecological water diverted, it produces land subsidence, saltwater intrusion and ecological deterioration. Huang-Huai River Basin water pollution is further exacerbated by the shortage of water resources.

由於資源性缺水，即使充分發揮節水、治污、挖潛的可能性，黃淮海流域僅靠當地水資源已不能支撐其經濟社會的[可持續發展](#)。為緩解黃淮海流域日益嚴重的水資源短缺，改善生態環境，保持經濟發展和社會進步，促進黃淮海流域的[經濟發展](#)和社會進步，中央決定在加大節水、治污力度和污水資源化的同時，從水量相對充沛的長江流域向這一地區調水，實施南水北調工程。

Due to shortage of water resources, even full water conservation, pollution control and tapping the potential, the Huang-Huai River Basin water alone cannot support local sustainable development of its economy and society. In order to alleviate the growing problem of the Huang-Huai River Basin water shortages, improve the ecological environment, maintain economic development and social progress, economic development and social progress of the Huang-Huai River basin, central authorities have decided to increase water conservation, pollution prevention efforts and waste resources, and transfer from the abundant water of the Yangtze River basin to the north and northwest.

II. 南水北調的主要供水對象

II. The target of water diversion

把南水北調工程近期的主要供水對象確定為[城市](#)，其原因：一是[城市人口](#)相對集中，耗水量和缺水量大；二是[城市經濟](#)、社會發展較快，受水資源制約嚴重；三是城市中[企業](#)、居民具有一定的水價支付能力，有利於[貸款](#)的償還。

The main water diversion targets are cities. There are three reasons: 1. the relative concentration of the urban population, water consumption and water volume are large. 2. The urban economy and social development in cities are rapid, and water constraints severely affected. 3. The residents in the cities have ability to pay water bills which could help to repay the loan.

通水後，在[保證](#)城市發展需水量的同時，可逐步置換擠占農業及生態用水，限制超采地下水、利用豐水年增加北調水量，恢復和改善地下水環境，增加[農業](#)、生態用水量。

After water diversion, urban water demand can be gradually replaced by agriculture and ecological water diverted. Limit the exploitation of groundwater, restore and improve the groundwater environment, and increase agricultural, ecological water consumption.

III. 南水北調的總體佈局

III. Layout of water diversion from south to north

經過上世紀 50 年代以來的勘測、規劃和研究，在分析比較 50 多種規劃方案的基礎上，分別在長江下游、中游、上游規劃了三個調水區，形成了南水北調工程東線、中線、西線三條調水線路。通過三條調水線路，與長江、淮河、黃河、海河相互聯接，構成我國中部地區水資源“四橫三縱、南北調配、東西互濟”的總體格局。

Chinese have surveyed, planned and researched since the 1950s, based on analysis and comparison of more than 50 planning schemes. In the Yangtze River downstream, midstream and upstream, water diversion plans were formed east line, middle line and west line in three diversion routes. Water diversion through three lines, and the Yangtze River, Huaihe River, Yellow River, Haihe River interconnected, constitutes the water "four vertical and three horizontal lines, north-south diversion, east-west benefit," the overall pattern of China.



1. 東線工程

(1) 工程概況

東線工程計劃分三期實施，2002年12月27日上午正式開工建設。工程主要是利用現有的京杭運河的河道及周圍的湖泊，用閘控制。東線工程規劃從長江下游抽引長江水，沿線建設的13級泵站，逐級提水北送，經洪澤湖、駱馬湖、南四湖和東平湖，於山東境內分兩路供水。一路越過黃河後，向黃淮海平原東部供水，自流到最終抵達天津；另一路向東供應青島、煙台。東線輸水主幹線長1150公里，其中黃河以南660公里，黃河以北490公里。從東平湖向東送水到山東半島的輸水線路長約690公里。東線於2013年12月8日正式通水。

第一期工程：利用江蘇省江水北調現有工程，擴大至抽江規模每秒500立方公尺，過黃河每秒50立方公尺，向膠東片供水每秒50立方公尺；向京浦鐵路沿線和膠東片城市補充水量，改善蘇北農業用水條件。

第二期工程：供水範圍擴大至河北省、天津市，抽江規模為每秒600立方公尺，過黃河每秒100立方公尺，到天津每秒50立方公尺，向膠東地區供水每秒50立方公尺。

第三期工程：工程規模擴大到抽江每秒800立方公尺，過黃河每秒200立方公尺，到天津每秒100立方公尺，向膠東地區供水每秒90立方公尺。

(2) 主要工程

- 輸水工程（包括輸水河道、泵站樞紐、穿黃工程）
- 蓄水工程
- 供電工程

(3) 工程優缺點

優點：東線調水，位於長江的下游，抽水量有保證，對生態環境的影響較小。同時，有現有的河道、湖泊可利用，工程費用小，修建較快，現已付諸實施。

缺點：抽水需要大量電能，運轉費用大。受污染，水質較差。

1. Eastern Engineering

(1) Project Overview

Eastern project in three phases, officially started construction on December 27, 2002. The main project is the use of existing lakes and Grand Canal and around the river, with a brake control. Eastern project plans from the Yangtze River water pumping cited, along the construction of 13 pumping stations, water progressively lifted to the north by the Lake Nansi and Lake Dongping, and to Shandong territory in two water routes. After all the way across the Yellow River, the water supply from the eastern part of the North China Plain, eventually arrived in Tianjin; the other way supply goes to Qingdao, Yantai. Eastern water line has length 1150 km, of which 660 km south of the Yellow River, 490 kilometers north of the Yellow River. The water line from Lake Dongping to Shandong Peninsula about 690 km. Water supply was formally started in the eastern line on December 8, 2013.

The first phase of the project: the use of the river to the north of Jiangsu Province existing projects and expand to the size of 500 cubic meters per second pumping river, trough the Yellow River 50 cubic meters per second, and to Jiaodong 50 cubic meters of water per second, and to Xiang Jing Pu Railway Shandong cities to add water supply to Shandong cities to improve conditions in northern agricultural water.

The second phase of the project: Water supply expanded to Hebei, Tianjin, pumping river size of 600 cubic meters per second, over 100 cubic meters per second, through the Yellow River to Tianjin 50 cubic meters per second, to the Jiaodong 50 cubic meters per second.

The third phase of the project: the project has increased to 800 cubic meters per second pumping river, through the Yellow River 200 cubic meters per second, and to Tianjin 100 cubic meters per second, and to Shandong region 90 cubic meters of water per second.

(2) Major projects

- Water Project (including aqueduct, pump station, Yellow River Project)
- Water storage project
- Power Engineering

(3) Engineering advantages and disadvantages

Advantages: Eastern water and river located in the Yangtze River pumping is guaranteed, and has less impact on the environment. At the same time, existing rivers and lakes can be used with less engineering costs and faster construction. It has been implemented.

Disadvantages: Pumping requires a lot of electricity with large operating costs. Pumping water has contamination and water quality is poor.

2. 中線工程

(1) 工程概況

中線工程於 2003 年 12 月 31 日開工建設。該工程是從位於長江支流漢江上游的丹江口水庫引水，輸水總乾渠的首閘是河南省南陽市淅川縣境內的陶岔渠，沿途經過伏牛山和太行山山前平原，京廣鐵路西側，跨越長江、淮河、黃河、海河四大流域，建設專用的立交供水渠道，採用自流方式，沿途供水，最終抵達北京和天津。中線調水工程總乾渠長 1246 公里，其中黃河以南 462 公里，穿黃河段約 10 公里，黃河以北 774 公里。天津乾渠長 144 公里。根據《南水北調工程供用水管理條例》，南水北調中線工程年調水平均數為 95 億立方米，中線工程的水量調度年度為每年 11 月 1 日至次年 10 月 31 日。2014 年 9 月 29 日，工程通過驗收，具備通水條件。¹2014 年 12 月 12 日正式通水。

(2) 主要工程

- 水源區工程（包括丹江口水利樞紐工程、丹江口水利樞紐續建工程、漢江中下游補償工程）
- 輸水工程（包括總乾渠、穿黃工程）

(3) 工程優缺點

- **優點：**水質好，覆蓋面大，地勢南高北低，可以自流引水，運轉費用可以大大節約。
- **缺點：**要開挖和修築很長的專用供水渠道，工程量巨大。主要水源地陝南不得發展工業，極大影響當地 1000 萬人口的經濟發展。

(4) 水量分配

一期工程平均年調水量 95 億立方米，二期工程將達到 130 億立方米，四個地區用水量分配如下：[河南](#)：37.7% [河北](#)：34.7% [北京](#)：12.4% [天津](#)：10.2%

2. Midline Project

(1) Project Overview

Transfer project was started on December 31, 2003. The project is located in the Yangtze River tributary Hanjiang River upstream from the Danjiangkou Reservoir water, water main canal of the first gate is Taocha drainage territory Xichuan Nanyang City, Henan Province,

passes through Funiushan and Taihang Piedmont, west of Beijing-Guangzhou railway, across Yangtze River, Huaihe River, Yellow River, Haihe River basin and building a dedicated interchange of water channels, using gravity methods, along the water, finally arrived in Beijing and Tianjin. Midline Water Diversion Project 1246 km long main canal, where 462 km south of the Yellow River, Yellow River about 10 km, 774 km north of the Yellow River. Tianjin, 144 km long canal. According to "water diversion project for water management regulations," the average annual water diversion North Water Transfer Project is 95 billion cubic meters of water a year for project scheduling midline year November 1 to October 31 next year. Project acceptance with passing water conditions was issued on September 29, 2014. The water supply was formally started on December 12, 2014.

(2) Major projects

- Water District Project (including the Danjiangkou Dam Project, Danjiangkou reconstruction project, Hanjiang River compensation works)
- Water Project (including the main canal, Yellow River Project)

(3) Engineering advantages and disadvantages

- Advantages: good water quality, coverage, low-lying South High North, may artesian water, can greatly reduce operating costs.
- Disadvantages: To excavation and construction of a long channel dedicated water supply, huge quantities. The main water source of industrial development in southern Shaanxi not greatly affect the economic development of the local population of 10 million.

(4) Water distribution

A project average annual 9.5 billion cubic meters of water transfer, the second phase will reach 13 billion cubic meters, four regional water allocation is as follows: Henan: 37.7%, Hebei: 34.7%, Beijing: 12.4%, Tianjin: 10.2%.

3. 西線工程

3. West Line Project

西線工程的目標是從長江上游引水入黃河，以解決中國西北地區和華北部分地區乾旱缺水問題。該線工程地處[青藏高原](#)，海拔高，地質的構造複雜，地震烈度大，且要修建 200 米左右的高壩和長達 100 公里以上的隧洞，工程技術複雜，耗資巨大，現仍處於可行性研究的過程中。

Target Project in the upper reaches of the Yangtze River water from the Yellow River to solve the water shortage problem in northwest and northern parts of China. The project is located in the Qinghai-Tibet Plateau line, high altitude, complex structural geology, seismic intensity large, and to the construction of the dam is about 200 meters and up to 100 km above the tunnel, engineering and technology complex, costly and is still in the feasibility course of the study.

IV. 工程世界記錄

IV. Project World Record

1. 世界最大水利工程，南水北調涉及長江、淮河、黃河、海河四大流域和十餘省，牽涉水量和距離均為世界最大水利工程。
2. 世界上最大泵站群，東線一期工程長 1467 公里，全線共設立 34 泵站，總機流量每秒 4447.6 立方米。
3. 世界首次大輸水隧道近距穿越地鐵下，北京西四環暗河工程從下方僅 3.67 米穿越營運中的北京市五棵松地鐵站。
4. 世界上最大穿河輸水隧道，中線穿黃工程，長 4 公里多的兩層襯砌水隧道穿越黃河激流。
5. 世界最深的調水豎井，中線穿黃工程將長江水穿越黃河的抽水豎井深 76.6 米。
6. 世界最大水壩升級，丹江口大壩加高工程，可相應增加庫容 116 億立方米。

1. This water diversion project is the world's largest water conservancy project, involving the south of the Yangtze River, Huaihe River, Yellow River, Haihe River and ten provinces. The water and distance are the world's largest water conservancy project.
2. The world's largest pumping station group, water Project 1467 km long, 34 pumping stations were set up across the board, switchboard 4447.6 cubic meters per second flow.
3. The world's first large water tunnel close through the subway, Beijing West Fourth Ring river engineering from below through the operation of only 3.67 meters in Beijing Wukesong subway station.
4. The world's largest river water through tunnels, middle Yellow River Project, 4 km long water tunnel lining two more across the Yellow River rapids.
5. The world's deepest water transfer shaft, midline crossing works will Yangtze River water pumped through the Yellow River 76.6 m deep shaft.
6. The world's largest dam upgrades, Danjiangkou Dam Heightening Project, can increase the storage capacity of 11.6 billion cubic meters accordingly.

V. 評價

V. Evaluation

1. 負面影響

南水北調的工程自提出後就引起了廣泛的爭論，反對者主要認為南水北調工程耗資巨大，涉及大量的移民問題，調水量太少，發揮不了經濟效益，調水量過多，枯水期可能會使長江的水量不足，影響長江河道的航運，長江口的鹹潮加深，更有可能引發生態危機。

(1) 主要爭議

2010 年初的中國西南大旱，中國水利水電科學研究院水力學所總工及災害與環境研究中心總工劉樹坤對南水北調工程提出了質疑。他認為，西南這次出現百年難遇的乾旱，應

該對水文資料重新修訂，對乾旱出現頻率，可能性都要重新評估。他認為這些評估的結果都會影響水利調度，重大水利工程何時開始做，做多大，影響程度有多大，都應重新評估。[2011年長江中下游旱災](#)引發對南水北調工程的質疑，南方是否有足夠水資源可以調配給北方，再次受到嚴峻的考驗。當面臨氣候變化時，對長江流域的生態環境是否會產生深遠的影響，也必須列入評估與考量。

(2)移民問題

南水北調工程造成[河南省](#)和[湖北省](#) 33 萬人搬遷，搬遷給移民生活帶來顛簸動蕩。有些移民因為得到的補償款不足，在買下政府提供的住房之後，所剩款項只能購置一小塊耕地。而安置地工作機會匱乏，有些人不得不計劃背井離鄉到大城市打工。由於國家投資少、安置標準低、水電路校等生產生活設施不能滿足基本需要，造成大量移民遺留問題。

(3)其他問題

發電量減少，從丹江口水庫調水，丹江口水電站的發電量有所減少（約減少年電量 7—8 億度）。文明古物問題，南水北調東、中線工程穿越中國古代文化、文明的核心地區，其影響範圍大，涉及文物遺存內涵豐富。雖然國家進行大量的搶救，但必將會淹沒一些文明古迹。對回遊生物的影響，調出區修建水庫會對一些需要到上游產卵的生物產生影響，甚至導致滅絕。

1. The negative impact

Since the proposed water diversion project has aroused widespread controversy after opponents mainly that costly water diversion project, involving a large number of immigrants, too little water transfer, not economic efficiency, excessive water transfer, water shortage during the dry season may cause the Yangtze River the impact of the Yangtze river shipping, the Yangtze River estuary salt tide deepened, more likely to lead to the ecological crisis.

(1) The main dispute

China Southwest drought early 2010, the total China Institute of Water Resources and Hydropower Engineering Mechanics and Disaster and Environment Research Center for Water Diversion Project Chief Engineer LIU Shu-kun questioned. He believes that the emergence of the Southwest drought of epic proportions, should be revised hydrological data on the frequency of drought, the possibility should be re-evaluated. He believes that the results of these assessments will affect water conservancy scheduling, when a major water project started, to do much, much impact, should be re-evaluated. 2011 drought in the Yangtze River water diversion project to raise questions, whether there is sufficient water resources in the South can be deployed to the north, again subject to a severe test. When faced with climate change, the

ecological environment of the Yangtze River basin will have a profound impact on whether or not, must be included in the evaluation and consideration.

(2) Immigration issues

North Water Diversion Project in Henan and Hubei Province caused 33 million relocation, relocation to immigrant life bumpy turbulence. Some immigrants because of inadequate compensation was, after the government offered to buy the house, the remaining money can only buy a small piece of farmland. The resettlement jobs scarce, some people had planned to leave their homes to work in the big cities. Since the state low investment, low resettlement criteria, such as water, electricity, schools and living facilities can not meet basic needs, resulting in a large number of immigrants legacy.

(3) Other issues

Power reduction, diversion from the Danjiangkou Reservoir, Danjiangkou hydropower generating capacity has decreased (about 7-8 billion kWh reduction in electricity consumption). Civilization antiquities issue, the South East, the ancient Chinese culture through the Transfer Project, the core area of civilization, its large scope, involving cultural relics rich content. Although the country a lot of rescue, but it will certainly drown some civilization monuments. Impact on migratory creatures, bring some district would need to build a reservoir upstream spawning biological impact, and even lead to extinction.

2. 正面影響

支持者大多認為長江水量豐富，每年有大量的水流入大海，調一部分到北方缺水地區可解決北方的缺水問題，負面影響可以通過防範、補償和綜合治理開發措施，可以將影響減少到最低。南水北調中線工程以解決沿線 100 多個城市生活和工業用水為主要供水對象，兼顧農業及其它用水，建成以後經濟效益和社會效益巨大。

(1) 緩解汛期對長江地區的威脅

大量的南水北調將減小洪水對長江地區的災害。南水北調中線工程完成後，漢江防汛形勢有望出現逆轉。丹江口水庫加高工程基本完成，而南水北調計劃每年從丹江口調水 95 億立方米。近些年類似汛情再度出現時，出現在中下游的洪峰將被「削」低 30 厘米。這意味著湖北宣城至沙洋之間的 14 個蓄洪民垸，遭遇百年一遇以下洪水可以不啟用。近 80 萬人、90 餘萬畝耕地基本解除洪水威脅。

(2) 促進北方經濟發展

較大地改善北方地區的生態和環境特別是水資源條件，增加水資源承載能力，提高資源的配置效率，促進經濟結構的戰略性調整；對於擴大內需，保持中國經濟快速增長，實現全國範圍內的結構升級和經濟社會環境的可持續發展，具有重要的戰略意義。

有利於緩解水資源短缺對北方地區城市化發展的制約，促進當地城市化進程。可改善農牧業生產條件，調整農牧業種植結構，提高土地利用效率。還可改污水灌溉為清潔水灌溉，減輕耕地污染及對農副產品的危害。

(3)改善北方水質及生態環境

能有效解決北方一些地區地下水因自然原因造成的水質問題，如高氟水、苦鹹水和其他含有對人體不利的有害物質的水源問題，改善當地飲水的質量。避免北方一些地區長期開採飲用有害深層地下水而引發的水源性疾病，遏止氟骨病與甲狀腺病的蔓延，有利於提高居民健康水平。

通過改善水資源條件來促進潛在生產力形成現實的經濟增長，逐步改善黃淮海地區的生態環境狀況，提高北方供水能力後，可以減少對地下水的超采，並可結合灌溉和季節性調節進行人工回灌，補充地下水，改善水文地質條件，緩解地下水位的大幅度下降和漏斗面積的進一步擴大，控制地面沉陷造成對建築物的危害。使中國北方地區逐步成為水資源配置合理、水環境良好的社會。

2. The positive impact

Most of the water-rich Yangtze supporters believe, a lot of water into the sea each year, adjusting to the north part of dryland solve water shortage problems in the north, the negative impact by prevention, compensation and comprehensive development measures can reduce the impact to a minimum. North Water Transfer Project to solve along the more than 100 municipal and industrial water supply as the main target, both agriculture and other water, built after the great economic and social benefits.

(1) Ease of Yangtze River flood threat

A lot of the South will reduce flooding on the Yangtze River disaster. North Water Transfer Project after completion of the Han River flood situation is expected to reverse. Heightening Danjiangkou Reservoir project completed, while the South Danjiangkou water diversion plan year from 9.5 billion cubic meters. When the recent re-emergence of a similar flood occurs in middle and lower reaches of the peak will be "cut" by 30 centimeters. This means that people in Hubei 14 flood embankment between Yicheng to Rasa Sayang, suffered a hundred years following the flood can not be enabled. Nearly 80 million people, more than 90 acres of arable land base to lift the threat of flooding.

(2) To promote the economic development of the North

Greatly improve the ecological and environmental conditions of the northern region especially water, increasing the carrying capacity of water resources, improve efficiency of resource allocation, promote strategic adjustment of economic structure; to expand domestic

demand and maintain China's rapid economic growth, achieving nationwide upgrading and sustainable economic and social environment has important strategic significance.

Help alleviate water shortages constraints on the development of the northern region of the city, promote local urbanization. Can improve agricultural production conditions, adjust agricultural planting structure and improve land utilization. Can also be changed to clean wastewater irrigation water irrigation, reduce pollution and arable land for agricultural hazards.

(3) To improve water quality and ecological environment of the North can effectively solve the water problem in some parts of northern groundwater due to natural causes, such as fluoride water, brackish water, and other quality of the human body contains harmful substances detrimental to water problems and improve the local drinking water. Avoid drinking some northern areas of long-term exploitation of deep groundwater caused by harmful waterborne diseases, curbing the spread of fluoride bone disease and thyroid disease, help to improve the health of residents.

After the formation of potential productivity to promote real economic growth through improved water conditions to gradually improve the ecological environment CURVES improve the northern water supply capacity, can reduce the over-exploitation of groundwater, irrigation and seasonal adjustment can be combined with manual back irrigation, groundwater recharge, improve the hydrogeological conditions, reduce groundwater levels dropped significantly expand and funnel area, control surface subsidence caused by damage to the building. Northern China has gradually become so reasonable allocation of water resources, water environment of social good.

Reference:

[中國南水北調](#)

Owner of Diaoyu Island Has Appeared

釣魚島的島主出現了

Extracted from internet

取自網路



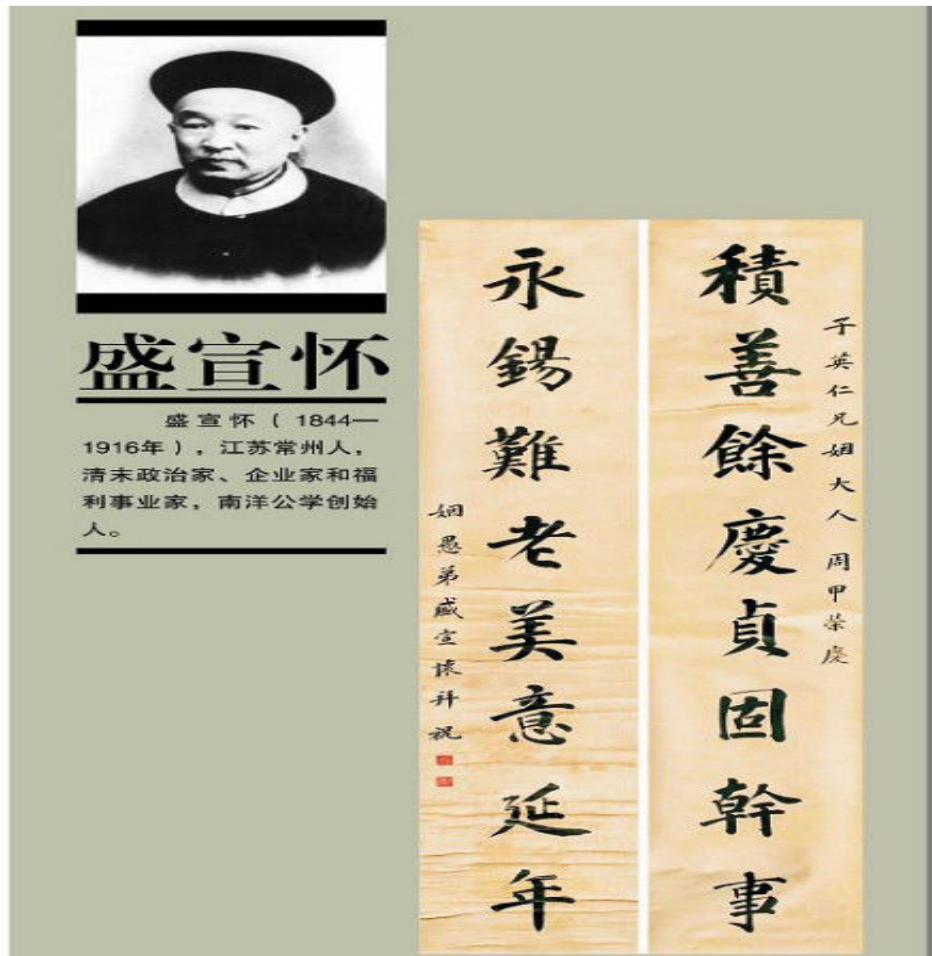
Diaoyu Island

釣魚島



真正的釣魚島島主找到了，有慈禧皇太后的諭旨為證！

The owner of Diaoyu Island has appeared which could be verified by the document issued by Queen Cishi in Qing Dynasty.



釣魚島的島主出現了，是大清國的江蘇武進人士盛宣懷的。

The owner of Diaoyu island has appeared in China, who was Shen Hsuan Hei in Jiangshu Province in Qing Dynasty. Diaoyu island and the other two small islands were given by Queen Cishi in Qing Dynasty for appreciation due to Shen's outstanding herb techniques for making excellent pills for curing Queen's illness.

皇太后慈諭 太常寺正卿盛宣懷所進藥丸甚有效驗 據奏原料藥材采自臺灣海外釣魚臺小島靈藥產於海上功效殊乎土知悉該卿家世設藥局施診給藥救濟貧病殊甚嘉許即將該釣魚臺黃尾嶼赤嶼三小島賞給盛宣懷為產業 供采藥之用其

深體

皇太后及皇上仁德普被之至意欽此

光緒十九年十月

(盛宣懷所進皇太后藥丸，原料藥材來自釣魚島，由盛宣懷的天津廣仁堂制)

The imperial document statements of Queen Cishi: The director of Taishang herb store has provided excellent herb pills which cure my illness. This herb is planted in the

Diaoyu island near Taiwan, which is more effective than that in mainland China. Since this store has produced many herbs to cure many sick people, we present Diaoyu, Huangwei and Tziyu three small islands to him for appreciation.

Sincerely,

Queen Cishi and Emperor Guangshu, October, 19th year of Emperor Guangshu

(The herb pills to Queen Cishi provided by Shen Hsuan Hei was originally made by Guangren store in Teinjin)



Compiled by S. H. Leong, Ph.D.

梁蓀河博士編選

審判結果

[Trial Verdicts]

共有 28 個被告被審判，大部分是軍事或政治的領導者。兩個被告（[永野修身](#)、[松岡洋右](#)）於審判期間自然因素死亡。[大川周明](#)在審判期間因為精神衰弱而沒有被起訴。




28 defendants were put on trial, most of them were either military or political leaders. Two defendants, Matsuoka Yosuke and Nagano Osami, died of natural causes during the trial. One defendant, Shumei Okawa, was found mentally unfit for trial and the charges were dropped.

絞刑

[Death by hanging]

七個人因為戰爭罪和違反人道罪而被判決絞刑。他們於 1948 年 12 月 23 日在東京都豐島區池袋巢鴨監獄執行死刑。

Seven defendants were sentenced to death by hanging for war crimes and crimes against humanity. They were executed at **Sugamo Prison in Ikebukuro** on December 23, 1948.

圖	姓名	註記
	東條英機 Hideki Tojo	陸軍大將，日本前關東遠征軍指揮官、前陸軍大臣、前內閣總理大臣。 General, Kuangdong Expeditionary Army Commander. Wartime prime minister.
	板垣征四郎 Seishiro Itagaki	陸軍大將，日本陸軍大臣、前關東軍參謀長、前中國派遣軍參謀長。 General, War minister, former chief of staff, Expeditionary Army, China.
	木村兵太郎 Heitero Kimura	陸軍大將，前駐緬甸日軍總司令。 General, Commander, Burma Area Army.

	土肥原賢二 Kenji Doihara	陸軍大將，特務、日本陸軍參謀本部軍官。General, chief of the intelligence in Manchukuo.
	廣田弘毅 Koki Hirota	男爵，日本前內閣總理大臣。Baron, former prime minister, foreign minister.
	松井石根 Iwane Matsui	陸軍大將，日本前華中派遣軍總司令。General, Shanghai Expeditionary Force and Central China Area Army.
	武藤章 Akira Muto	陸軍中將，日本前第十四師團參謀長、前陸軍省軍務局局長。Lieutenant General, chief of staff, 14 th Area Army.

终生監禁

16 人被判決終生監禁。三人（[小矶国昭](#)、[白鳥敏夫](#)、[梅津美治郎](#)）死於獄中，而其他的於 1950 年代陸續假釋出獄。

- [荒木貞夫](#)：陸軍大將，日本前文部大臣。1955 年獲釋。
- [梅津美治郎](#)：陸軍大將，日本前陸軍參謀總長、前關東軍司令。1949 年病逝於獄中。
- [大島浩](#)：日本前駐德國大使。1955 年獲釋。
- [岡敬純](#)：海軍大將，日本前海軍省軍務局局長、海軍次官。1954 年獲釋。
- [賀屋興宣](#)：日本前大藏大臣。1955 年獲釋。
- [木户幸一](#)：侯爵，日本前內大臣、前文部大臣。1955 年獲釋。
- [小矶国昭](#)：陸軍大將，前朝鮮總督，日本前首相。1950 年病逝於獄中。
- [佐藤賢了](#)：陸軍大將，日本前陸軍省軍務局長。1956 年獲釋。
- [嶋田繁太郎](#)：海軍大將，日本前海軍大臣、前海軍軍令部總長。1955 年獲釋。
- [白鳥敏夫](#)：日本前駐意大利大使、外務省顧問官。1949 年 6 月 3 日病逝於獄中。
- [鈴木貞一](#)：陸軍大將，日本前內閣企画院總裁兼無任所國務大臣。1955 年獲釋。
- [南次郎](#)：陸軍大將，日本前關東軍司令、前朝鮮總督。1954 年獲釋。

- 橋本欣五郎：陸軍大將，中日戰爭的煽動者、日本翼贊政治會（法西斯統治下的議會）總裁。1955 年獲釋。
- 畑俊六：陸軍大將，日本前華中派遣軍總司令。1954 年獲釋。
- 平沼騏一郎：男爵，日本前國務大臣。1952 年獲釋。
- 星野直樹：日本前書記官長兼國務大臣。1958 年獲釋。

Sixteen defendants were sentenced to life imprisonment.

Three (Koiso, Shiratori, and Umezu) died in prison, while the other thirteen were paroled between 1954 and 1958:

- General Sadao Araki, war minister
- Colonel Kingorō Hashimoto, major instigator of the second Sino-Japanese War
- Field Marshal Shunroku Hata, war minister
- Baron Kiichirō Hiranuma, prime minister
- Naoki Hoshino, Chief Cabinet Secretary
- Okinori Kaya, finance minister
- Marquis Kōichi Kido, Lord Keeper of the Privy Seal
- General Kuniaki Koiso, governor of Korea, later prime minister
- General Jirō Minami, commander, Kwantung Army
- Admiral Takazumi Oka, naval minister
- Lieutenant General Hiroshi Ōshima, Ambassador to Germany
- General Kenryō Satō, chief of the Military Affairs Bureau
- Admiral Shigetarō Shimada, naval minister
- Toshio Shiratori, Ambassador to Italy
- Lieutenant General Teiichi Suzuki, president of the Cabinet Planning Board
- General Yoshijirō Umezu, war minister
-

幾點簡短的評論

(1) 逃出法網的戰犯們

由於某些因素，最少數十名戰犯沒有被起訴。但最令人注意的，是兩個頭號戰犯竟然逃之法外：

第一號戰犯：裕仁[即日本天皇]。裕仁沒有被起訴的理由很簡單。東京日本戰犯審判的整個過程，都是由盟軍最高統帥麥克阿瑟將軍一手辦理。從起訴律師到法官，都經由他親手選擇。他認為要是把裕仁吊起來，戰後的日本並不容易統治。所以他就把正義換取方便。

第二號戰犯：石井四郎。美國人和日本人還做了另一個傷天害理的交易。從一九三十年代初起到四十年代，石井四郎以日本陸軍中將的頭銜，率領[731 部隊]在滿州進行用中國戰俘

和平民做細菌和化學戰實驗. 他用十多年積累下來的細菌和化學戰實驗數據來換取他的生命. 用最客氣的話來說, 那就是美國人與這位天賦的石井四郎是同犯.

(2) 日本人與德國人對於他們在二次世界大戰所犯下的罪行及反省: 一個比較

德國政府和人民承認他們的錯誤, 並唾棄了希特勒和他的窮兇極惡的同黨. 他們還禁止納粹主義和它的各種標誌. 所以德國人所犯過的罪孽, 已經深深的被埋葬了. 世人再也不提他們過去的錯誤. 而日本人呢? 他們的反省是甚麼? 日本人竟把他們犯下彌天大罪的戰犯們及他們的牌位放進靖國神社, 像神仙一樣的供奉. 每年都有大批高官們, 甚至首相前往朝拜. 只要日本人繼續拜鬼魔, 世人就會世世代代都指著日本人的鼻子說: [這是拜鬼魔的民族].

A Few Terse Commentaries

(1) The War Criminals Who Escaped from the Net of Justice

For various reasons, at least dozens of war criminals were not brought to trial. The most conspicuous ones were the two top Japanese war criminals:

The Number 1 War Criminal: [Hirohito, the Emperor of Japan]. The reason why Hirohito was not indicted for war crime was simple. The Allie Supreme Commander, General Douglas MacArthur, single-handedly staged the Tokyo War Crime Trial, even the selection of prosecutors and judges. He reasoned that if Hirohito were hang, governing post-war Japan would be a difficult task. So he simply exchanged justice for convenience.

The Number 2 War Criminal:[Shiro Ishii] The Americans and the Japanese negotiated another outrageous transaction. As a Lieutenant General in the Japanese army, Shiro Ishii commanded the so-called Unit 731 in Manchuria from the early 1930s to the 1940s. Unit 731's responsibility was performing human experiments on chemical and germ warfare using Chinese prisoners of war and civilians. Shiro Ishii gave the entire database on chemical and germ warfare experiments which he had accumulated over ten years to the Americans in exchange for his life. To use the politest term possible, the Americans were an accomplice of the Goddam Shiro Ishii.

(2) German and Japanese Introspections on Their War Crimes – a Comparison

The German government and people admitted their errors and renounced Hitler and his gang of cutthroats. They have outlawed Nazism and all the symbols which represented Nazism. Through their action of repentance, they have buried their past crimes in the deepest grave and the people of the world will never question their past transgressions again. By contrast, how do the Japanese government and people handle the history concerning their role as an initiator of the 2nd World War?

They have immortalized their vicious war criminals in their Yasukuni Jinja, a Shinto shrine. Each year, a large number of government officials, even the prime minister, go there to show their respects. As long as the Japanese people refuse to confront history regarding the role they played in the 2nd World War, the people of the world, generation after generation, will point their fingers at the Japanese: “These people are demon worshipers!”

注一. 以上的資料多取自維基百科.

Ref. 1 Most of the material above has been extracted from **Wikipedia**.

Dilemmas of China's Modernization: Population Problem and the Strategy of Sustainable Development (3)

中國現代化的困境:人口問題與 可持續發展戰略 (3)

Hongbo Tang

唐洪波

CHAPTER III: THE HISTORICAL REASONS

第三章: 中国的人口问题

OF CHINA'S POPULATION PROBLEMS

的历史原因

Several historical factors are responsible for the above plight of China's population. Focused on the influence of the population policies, this paper will discuss China's population growth in the Qing Dynasty and Mao Zedong and Post-Mao eras respectively.

造成中国人口以上的困境有若干历史因素。本文将以人口政策的影响为重点，分别讨论中国在清代与毛泽东时代以及后毛泽东时代的人口增长。

Population Policy of the Qing Dynasty and Population Growth 清代人口政策与人口增长

The large population base of China traces its history to the eighteenth century. China's population saw a slow increase throughout a long period of A.D. 0-1700. It just grew from 60 million to 140 million. The dramatic increase began at the eighteenth century. Kang-xi and Yong-zheng, the two emperors with illustrious names in the Qing Dynasty, issued two influential policies in 1712 and 1723 "Newborns will not be taxed" and the "Merger of population tax into land tax". Almost all Chinese historians praised these merciful and wise policies that lessened the burden of Chinese people. As they were implemented for nearly two centuries, they brought with China an unpredictable consequence -- China's population increased with a striking growth rate-- 2.5% per year. As a result, China's population rose to 200 million in 1762 from 100 million in 1712; then reached to 300 million in 1790; and again rose to 400 million in 1834. It accounted for over 40% of the total population of the world at that time.¹ In other words, China's population doubled within 50 years and doubled again within the following 72 years.

中国庞大人口基数的历史可追溯到十八世纪。从公元元年至 1700 年中国人口一直长期增长缓慢，仅从 6 千万增长到 1.4 亿人，十八世纪才开始剧增。清代著名的康熙和雍正皇帝，分别于 1712 和 1723 年颁布了两项颇具影响力的政策：“滋生人口永不纳税”和“丁税合一”。几乎所有的中国历史学家均称赞这两项仁慈明智的政策减轻了民众的负担，然而在它们实施了近两个世纪之后，却给中国带来了未曾预测的后果：全国人口以每年 2.5% 的速度显著增长，从而使全国人口从 1712 年的 1 亿人增长到 1762 年的 2 亿人，1790 年更达到 3 亿人，1834 年又上升到 4 亿人，占了当时世界总人口的 40%。换句话说，中国人口在 50 年内翻了一番并于之后的 72 年内又翻了一番。

¹ Liang Fangzhong, *Statistic on historical population, lands and taxes of China: Qing Dynasty*. (Shanghai: Shanghai People's Press, 1980) p. 359-423.

To China's modernization, the pressure of rapid population growth was an accomplished fact and a potential challenge before China began its industrialization in the middle of the nineteenth century and became an on-going problem and a significant challenge through the whole process of its modernization in the past one and a half centuries. Such a heavy burden on Chinese society and economy can explain the serious social crisis in the nineteenth century, such as the Taiping Rebellion from 1851 to 1864, which caused by both class contradictions (such as most farmlands were collected by minority landlords whereas majority peasants lost their farmlands) and the pressure of the population boom on the arable land, resulting in a disastrous consequence: the death of over 100 million people, nearly one-third of China's total population at that time. Between 1851 and 1949, China experienced "a century of rebellion, social upheaval, and suffering" such as Opium War I (1840-42), the Taiping Rebellion (1851-64), Opium War II (1856-1860), the Boxer Rebellion (1900-01), the Sun Yetsan Revolution (1911), the Civil War I (1912-1927), the Civil War II (1927-38), the Sino-Japan War (1938-1945), the Civil War III (1946-49). As the result, the absolute growth of China's population over this century was relatively lower, increasing "only by another 100 million" on the base of its 432 million in 1851.² In other words, the frequent national and international wars kept China's population within its limits before 1949. The high reproduction rate, however, allowed China's population to recover soon. After the wars, China still kept its status as the most populous country in the world. The People's Republic of China had a population of 540 million when it was founded in 1949, among which the urban population merely reached 10.6% of the national population.³

对中国的现代化来讲，开始于十九世纪中叶的工业化进程中，始终伴随着人口剧增的压力这样一个既成事实和潜在挑战，而且在过去一个半世纪的现代化建设过程中，依旧成为一个持续问题与重大挑战。十九世纪严重的社会危机可说明 它对中国社会和经济造成的沉重负担。例如 1851~1864 年的太平天国运动，正是由于阶级矛盾（土地兼并严重而造成广大农民丧失土地）和人口增长的压力造成了灾难性的后果：超过 1 亿人死亡，占中国当时总人口的近三分之一。从 1851 到 1949 年中国经历了“一个世纪的叛乱、社会动荡和苦难”，如鸦片战争（1840~1842 年）、太平天国运动（1851~1864 年）、第二次鸦片战争（1856~1860 年）、义和团运动（1900~1901 年）、辛亥革命（1911 年）、第一次内战（1912~1927 年）、第二次内战（1927~1938 年）、抗日战争（1938~1945 年）、第三次内战（1946~1949 年）等。结果是中国人口在该世纪的绝对增长值相对较低，在 1851 年 4.32 亿人的基础上“仅增长了 1 亿人”。换句话说，频繁的国内和国际战争使 1949 年以前的中国人口保持在一定的限度内。然而，高生殖率又令中国人口很快恢复增长，战后的中国依然是世界上人口最多的国家。1949 年成立的中华人民共和国有 5.4 亿人口，但其城镇人口仅占全国人口的 10.6%。

Population Growth in Mao Zedong Era

毛泽东时代的人口增长

When the Chinese Communist leaders set the goal for China's modernization---"to realize industrialization rapidly" based on "poor and blank domestic economy,"⁴ Their had to face the dilemma of "a powerful state in politics and population" and "a weak state in economy." Just as

² Ge, 6-7.

³ Jiang Tao, "Re-examine on the Population Problems of Modern China," *Guangming Daily*, 28 Feb. 1994.

⁴ Mao Zedong, *Mao Zedong Xuan-Ji* (Selected Works of Mao Zedong), Vol. 5 (Beijing: The People's Press, 1977), 174.

Chairman Mao Zedong said in 1957: “You (China) have so many people and so much land, as well as abounding natural resources; you (China) also have socialist advantages-- then, if you could not surpass the United States within 50-60 years, you (China) should be expelled from the earth! Therefore, it is not only possible but also absolutely necessary to surpass the United States. If not, we Chinese nation should have a guilty conscience to all nations in the world, and our contribution to the human beings would not be great.”⁵ Unfortunately, they assumed optimistically they could keep the problems in control by rapid industrialization.

基于“一穷二白的国民经济”，中共领导人确定中国的现代化建设目标为“迅速实现工业化”时，他们不得不面对“一个政治与人口大国”同时是“一个经济弱国”的困境。正如毛泽东主席在 1957 年所言：「你（中国）有这么多人，这么多土地，还有丰富的自然资源；你（中国）也有社会主义的优越性 --那么，假如你不能在五、六十年内超过美国，你（中国）就该被逐出地球！所以不仅可能、而且必须超越美国，否则我们中华民族就愧对世界，我们对人类的贡献就不够大。」不幸的是，他们盲目乐观地认为他们能够通过迅速工业化来解决这个问题。

In addition, the development of China's society and economy after 1950 made it possible to accelerate its increasing population. With a stable society-- improvement of medical and health conditions, and development of production-- China witnessed a rapid population growth, reaching 807 million in 1969. In detail, the Government of China controlled the previous factors affecting the increase of population: wars, pestilences (such as smallpox, which resulted in mass people's deaths in previous years), regional diseases, and famines --except for the Great Famine which took place after the Great Leap Forward, the greatest man-made famine in Chinese history, which caused 38 million deaths of Chinese people during 1959 to 1961 and led to a negative natural population increase rate of -0.46% in 1960.⁶ After the three-year food shortage crisis, however, its population growth accelerated. Although China still was a poor country, and most of its huge population lived barely above the basic subsistence level before 1980s, this did not impede the growth of population.

此外，1950 年以后中国的社会经济发展促进了其人口的迅速增长。在社会稳定、医疗卫生条件改善、生产发展的条件下，中国人口迅速增长，到 1969 年达到 8.07 亿。具体而言，中国政府控制住了以前影响人口增长的诸因素：例如战争、传染病（像造成大批民众死亡的天花之类）、地方病、饥荒等等。--除了“大跃进”之后史上最大的人为大饥荒，在 1959-1961 年间造成了 3800 万中国人的死亡，并导致了 1960 年人口-0.46%的负增长率之外。然而三年困难时期一过，中国人口又很快增长起来。尽管中国仍然贫穷，多数人口在 20 世纪 80 年代以前仅勉强维持基本生活，却并未影响其人口的增长。

Another important reason is that the Chinese traditional values have led to mistakes in the policy of China's population. Ordinary Chinese people have this deep-rooted logic: “the more children, the more good fortune” and “many sons bring much riches”.⁷ China is a developing state where most people have lived in poverty until recently. Its economic level and social property are limited, and its social security system is far from being comprehensive. This basic situation has convinced ordinary Chinese people that they must rely on themselves and their family when approaching old age. In addition, the rural families feel shame if they have no sons

⁵ Mao, Vol. 5, 296.

⁶ Shen Jianfa, “China's Future Population and Development Challenges,” *The Geographical Journal* 164, no. 1 (Mar. 1998): 32

⁷ Li Yinhe, *Reproduction and Village Culture in China*, (Hong Kong: Oxford Press, 1994), 36.

to continue their family trees. No wonder almost all Chinese agreed with what Mao Zedong advocated in the 1960s “the more people, the stronger we are”.⁸ In addition, socialist ideology made it easy to dismiss the population threat. “For Marx, the fact that people were producers as well as consumers meant that the resource limits emphasized by the classical economists could arise under capitalism, but not under socialism.”⁹ Marx’s insight into this matter has been used for making population policy by Chinese socialist leaders. Mao Zedong said in the 1950s: “even if China’s population multiplies many times, she is fully capable of finding a solution; the solution is production”¹⁰ They did not realize that a person’s work created social property, while people themselves consumed social property. If a higher population consumed more social property than what they created, how could a society accumulate capital and thereby develop its economy? In other words, they failed to realize that their excessive human reproduction would severely hurt the promotion of public welfare.

另一个重要原因是中国传统的价值观导致了中国人口政策的失误。普通中国民众有根深蒂固的“多子多福”和“儿多生财”观念。作为一个多数人才摆脱不久贫困的发展中国家，中国的经济水平和社会财富比较有限，社会保障体系还远未完善。这一基本国情令普通民众相信，他们年老时要靠自己及家人养老，农村家庭也会为没有儿子继承香火感到羞耻。难怪几乎所有人都认同毛泽东 60 年代所倡导的“人多力量大”。此外，社会主义理论能轻易化解人口威胁论。“马克思主义认为，人既是生产者又是消费者意味着，古典经济学家所讲的资源有限论仅仅可能出现在资本主义制度下，而非社会主义制度下”。马克思的这一论点被用于社会主义领导人制定其人口政策。毛泽东在 50 年代讲到：“即使中国人口再增加几倍也有办法解决，这个办法就是生产”。他们没有意识到，人类生产创造社会财富，而人类自身也消费社会财富。如果人类消耗的社会财富比他们创造的社会财富多，一个社会如何能积累资本，从而发展其经济？换句话说，他们没有意识到过度的人类生育将严重损害社会福利的提升。

Not only did the ordinary Chinese people lack awareness of the importance of birth control for a state, but also the leaders of the Chinese Government insisted on a mistaken idea concerning this issue. As early as in January 1952, Mao Zedong urged *The People’s Daily* to publish an editorial titled “Limited reproduction will lead to subjugate China”, and encouraged women to give birth rather than to promote birth control. In 1957, Dr. Ma Yingchu, a famous demographer-economist and the President of Beijing University, published “*A New Population Policy*”, which accurately indicated that, related to the weakness of China’s economic policy, overpopulation would hinder China’s productivity and the accumulation of capital and hamper the rise of the standard of living. He suggested that the Government promote birth control, which predated promotion of family planning policy of the 1970s by about 20 years. As a result, Dr. Ma was purged and severely criticized as Rightist, Anti-socialist, and Anti-communist, and his theory was criticized as an imitation of the “capitalist and reactionary Malthusian Theory.”¹¹ Another serious consequence to the state was that China embraced another peak of population growth: from 1962 to 1975, China witnessed a rise of 350 million people in its population.

⁸ Mao Zedong, *Mao Zedong Xuan-Ji* (Selected Works of Mao Zedong), Vol. 3 (Beijing: The People’s Press, 1977), 140.

⁹ Michael S. Teitelbaum, “The Population Threat,” *Foreign Affairs* 71, no. 5 (winter 1992), 67.

¹⁰ Mao, 452.

¹¹ Ge, 233-235.

不仅普通中国民众对国家控制生育的重要性缺乏认识，就连国家领导人也对这一问题观点有误。早在 1952 年 1 月，毛泽东敦促人民日报发表题为“节制生育会导致亡国”的社论，鼓励妇女生育而非节育。1957 年著名人口学家、经济学家、北京大学校长马寅初博士发表了“新人口论”，准确指出中国经济政策的相关缺陷，认为人口过多有碍于中国的生产率和资本积累，有碍于生活水平的提高。他建议政府提倡节育，比 70 年代提倡计划生育政策还早了约 20 年。结果马寅初被定为反党反社会主义的右派分子遭到严厉批判，其人口论被当作“反动的资产阶级马尔萨斯论”遭到批判。而另一个对国家的严重后果则是，中国人口迎来了再次增长高峰：1962 至 1975 年全国人口增长了 3.5 亿。

Figures 2 and 3 indicate the natural growth rate and the birth/death rate in China during 1949 and 1999. Based on the data released by the National Bureau of Statistics of China, it is easy to see a rapid increase in the natural growth rate and a decline in the death rate except for the period of 1959-1961. The birth rate surpassed 2.5% before 1976 except for the same period of 1959-1961 and saw a continued downward trend since then.

图 2 和图 3 表明，1949~1999 年期间中国人口的自然增长率和出生死亡率。从国家统计局公布的数据中显而易见，除了 1959~1961 年间之外，人口自然增长率快速增和死亡率下降的趋势。除 1959~1961 年间以外，1976 年以前出生率均超过 2.5%，之后呈持续下降趋势。

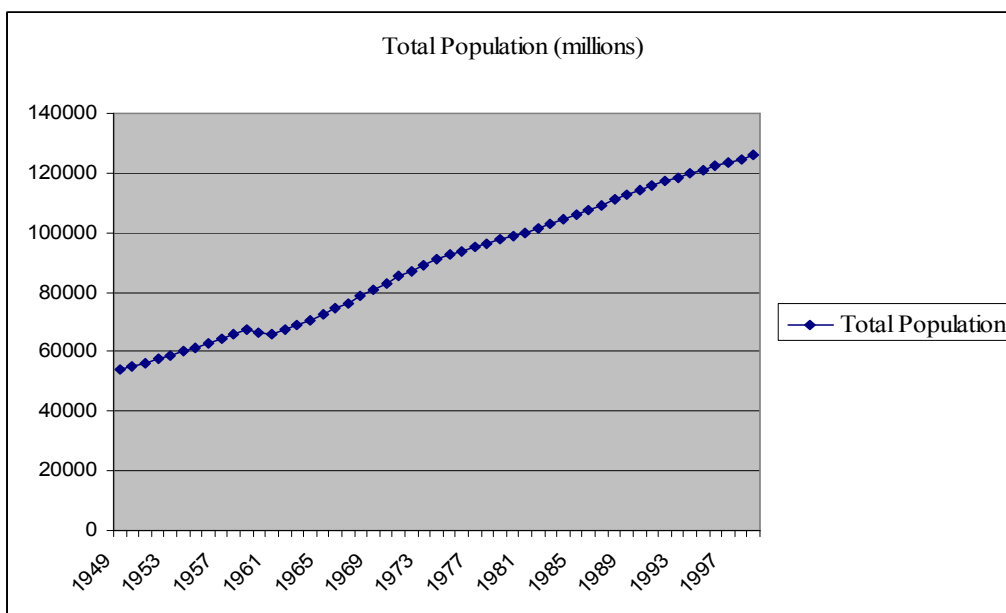


Figure 2: Natural Growth Rate in China, 1949-1999

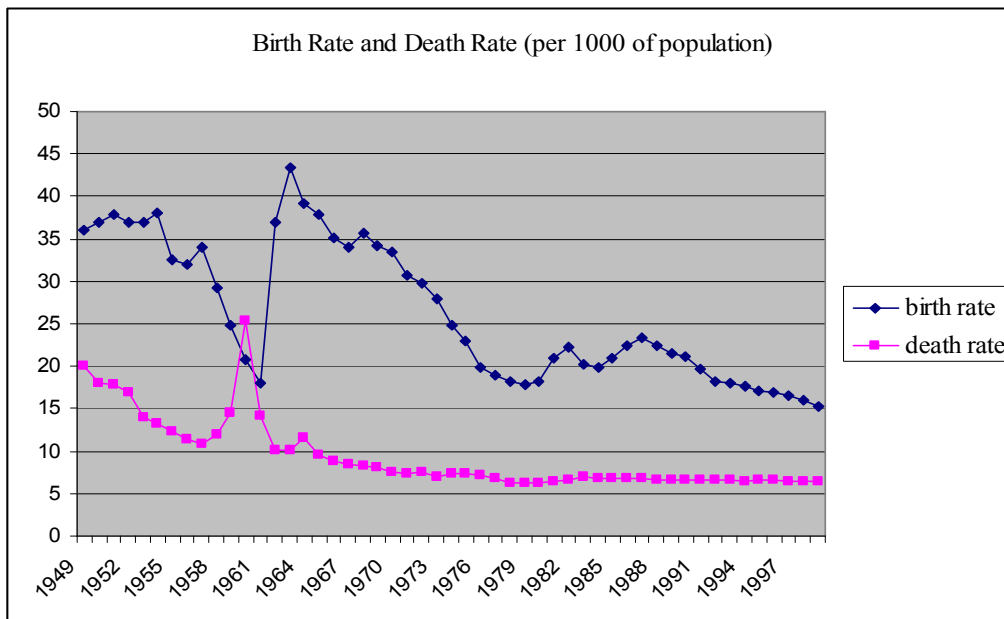


Figure 3: Birth Rate and Death Rate in China, 1949-1999

*Sources: National Bureau of Statistics of China, “China Statistical Yearbook 2000,” (14 may 2002) <http://www.cpirc.org.cn/en/year.htm> (accessed 16 Mar. 2007).

Family Planning Policy in Post-Mao Era

后毛泽东时代的计划生育政策

Not until 1973 did the Chinese Government implement the family planning policy by efforts of Premier Zhou Enlai, with a slogan “One is best, two at most, but never a third.” As to the specific regulations, China has limited each urban couple to one child. Rural couples are allowed to have a second child if the firstborn is a girl or two children have a four-year spacing. China’s 55 ethnic minority groups have no restriction on family size. In the 1990s, the family planning regulates limited ethnic minority couples in rural areas of minority autonomous regions to 2-3 children, but rural Tibetan people still have no restriction on family size.¹² The implementing of this stringent population control policy, however, actually became effective in 1978 when “every township and town had a Birth Planning Commission” directed by the State Family Planning Commission (SFPC). Inserting the word “Population” in its name in 2003, SFPC was replaced by “the State Family Planning and Population Commission” (SFPPC) as the “inter-ministerial agency in charge of population policy formulation and implementation.” This was actually a change in the commission’s functions to “tackle a much wider range of population-related problems” besides birth control.¹³ Evidence showed that “the commission’s work was very effective,” and the birth control policies had brought the beginning of a decrease in birth rate since the end of the 1970s. For instance, according to census results in 1990, China’s total population was 1.1 billion with a birth rate at 1.47%. In 1995 its population was 1.2 billion with

¹² Peng Xizhe, “Is It Time to Change China’s Population Policy?” *China: an International Journal* 2, no. 1 (2004), 136-137.

¹³ Xinhua Agency, “Population Timeline,” *China Daily*, 20 Aug. 2003.

a birth rate of 1.12%. By the end of 2003, the birth rate stood at 1.24% with a mortality rate of 0.64 %, leaving a natural growth rate of 0.6%.¹⁴ Let me explain these data in another way: during the first twenty years' of the implementation of this policy it prevented 300 million peoples' births accumulatively-- about the size of the national population of today's United States-- and thereby "saved \$4,000 billion (yuan) of the strain on food production and other resources"; and "the number of children born to each Chinese family decreased to 1.8" in the 1990s, only reached half the number of what they had before 1975.¹⁵ Table 5 presented the continued upward trend of "only-child" birth rate since the Chinese Government implemented the family planning policy in 1973.

在周恩来总理的努力下，中国政府直到 1973 年才实施了计划生育政策，当时的口号是“一个不少，两个最好，三个多了”。具体规定每个城市夫妇只许生一个孩子；农村夫妇允许生两个孩子，前提是头胎是一个女孩或两个孩子的年龄间隔四岁；对 55 个少数民族则无生育限制。到了 90 年代，少数民族自治区的农村少数民族夫妇限制生 2-3 胎，但对西藏的农村夫妇仍无生育限制。实际上直到 1978 年中国才真正严格执行了计划生育政策，在国家计生委领导下，“每个乡镇均设有计划生育委员会”。2003 年国家计生委的名称中加入“人口”一词，改为“国家计划生育与人口委员会”，成为“跨部委的制定和实施人口政策的主管机构”，实际上使该委员会的职能由控制生育而扩大为更广范围的“解决所有与人口有关的问题”。证据表明“该委员会的工作非常有效”，计划生育政策令出生率从 70 年代末开始下降。例如据 1990 年人口普查结果，中国总人口为 11 亿，出生率为 1.47%；1995 年全国总人口为 12 亿，出生率为 1.2%；截至 2003 年底，全国的出生率为 1.24%，若减去 0.64% 的死亡率，仅有 0.6% 的人口自然增长率。换句话说，这项政策实施的头二十年内就累计少生了 3 亿人（相当于当今美国的全国人口），从而“节省了 40 亿元人民币的粮食与其他资源的消耗”。到了 90 年代，“中国减少到每个家庭平均 1.8 个孩子”，只有 1975 年以前的一半数量。表 5 可见中国政府在 1973 年实施计划生育政策后，“独生子女”率持续上升的趋势。

Table 5: Share of First, Second, and Third or Higher-order Births in China, 1973-2000 (Percent of Birth Rate)

	1 st birth	2 nd birth	3 rd birth and above
1973	21	21	59
1980	38	27	35
1987	52	32	17
2000	68	26	6

*Source: Nancy E. Riley, "China's Population: New Trends and Challenges," *Population Bulletin* 59, no. 2 (June 2004), 16.

Thus, China claimed "a decisive victory in population control efforts by the 1990s".¹⁶ The "one-child-per-family policy", however, is responsible for the plight of the gender ratio imbalance, the aging society, "4: 2: 1 family model", as well as the psychosocial defects of the

¹⁴ CPIRC, "China to Usher in Major Changes in Population Policies."

¹⁵ Chen Qin, 295.

¹⁶ CPIRC, "China to Usher in Major Changes in Population Policies."

only-child. In fact, this policy has been a controversial topic worldwide since the 1980s (I will discuss this very question in the final section.). For example, China's family planning policy was accused by the West of violating its people's Human Rights. Politically and academically, these accusations were challenged by many government officials and scholars. Just as anthropologist Susan Greenhalgh states, "Wedged between an anti-totalitarian, China-demonizing discourses emerging from conservative forces in the United States... Most western Feminists and Chinese specialists have avoided the topic, perhaps deeming it too politically sensitive and ideologically troubling to touch."¹⁷ Other related problems as to the accuracy of official census figures, "floating population", and baby booms, however, appeared gradually and influenced the efficiency of China's birth control program.

自此中国宣布“到 90 年代时人口控制工作已取得了决定性胜利”。然而，“一胎化政策”又带来了性别比例失衡、社会老龄化、“4:2:1 家庭模式”以及独生子女的心理缺陷等负面问题。事实上该政策自 80 年代以来，一直是一个有争议的全球话题（作者将在最后一节讨论该问题）。例如，中国的计划生育政策被西方指责为侵犯人权。在政治上和学术上，许多政府官员和学者亦挑战这些指控。正如人类学家苏珊格林哈尔希指出，“在反极权主义思潮中，美国保守势力又兴起妖魔化中国话题... 大多数西方女权主义者和中国学者回避该话题，也许因为它在政治上太敏感，在理论上招惹麻烦”。毕竟像官方人口普查数字的准确性问题与流动人口、婴儿潮等相关问题已逐渐出现，并影响着中国计划生育的成效。

First, the accuracy of China's official census figures is doubtful. According to Zhu Zhixin, general director of the National Bureau of Statistics, the census figures in 2000 showed that "China's population has grown by 132 million since 1990, an increase of 11.7%; annual growth was 1.07% --down 0.4% from the rate in the 1980s." He declared: "the census showed that China's compulsory birth-control policies were effective in holding down population growth."¹⁸ Some Western independent analysts, who "put the number of Chinese as high as 1.5 billion," however, believed that those official census figures substantially underestimated the actual growth of China's population because "many Chinese are reluctant to co-operate with the census takers." Just as Rupert Wingfield-Hayes, the BBC Beijing correspondent, reported that "serious questions remain over the accuracy of the figures... as tens of millions of people with extra children are thought to have hidden them from the census takers for fear of being punished."¹⁹ As another example, when the result of the gender ratio of Chinese new births of 112: 100 in 1990 demographic census was published, a majority of Chinese researchers doubted the accuracy of this figure. They believed that the actual situation of gender ratio imbalance of Chinese new births was not as serious as what the figure showed. The reason the figures were higher than their estimates resulted from deceptive reporting of downplaying statistics on baby girls on purpose.²⁰ Undeniably, many false reports and statistics, which were made intentionally by some officials of local governments to indicate their political achievement or to avoid punishment, made China's official census figure unbelievable to the West.

¹⁷ Susan Greenhalgh, "Fresh Winds in Beijing: Chinese Feminists Speak Out on the One-Child Policy and Women's Lives," *Signs* 26, no. 3 (Spring, 2001): 847.

¹⁸ BBS News, "China's Population Growth 'Slowing?'"

¹⁹ BBS News, "China's Population Growth 'Slowing?'"

²⁰ Yu Xuejun ed, *Review on the Development of China's Population: Reexamining and Prospect* (Beijing: The People's Press, 2000), 176.

首先，中国官方人口普查数据的准确性令人质疑。据国家统计局局长朱志新称，2000年人口普查的数据显示，“全国人口自1990年以来增长了11.7%，为1.32亿人，年增长率为1.07%，比80年代下降了0.4%。所以该数据表明，中国的计划生育政策有效地遏制了人口增长”。然而一些西方独立分析人士却认为，“中国人口已高达15亿人”，官方人口普查数据大大低估了中国人口的实际增长，因为“许多中国人不愿意配合普查员的工作”。正如英国广播公司驻北京记者鲁伯特温菲尔德·海斯报道说：“这些数据的准确性存在严重问题...上千万超生者因惧怕遭处罚而对普查员隐瞒实情”。再比如，当1990年人口普查发布112:100的男女婴儿出生性别比例的结果后，很多中国研究人员怀疑这一数字的准确性。他们认为全国新生儿性别比例失衡的实际情况并未达到该数字显示得那么严重，其原因是故意隐瞒女婴的统计。不可否认的是，一些地方政府官员为了昭示其政绩或避免惩罚而故意造假数据，致使中国的官方人口普查数据令人难以取信于西方。

Second, China's soaring rural immigration made population control difficult. With the transition to the market economy system from the planned new economy system 30 years ago, household registration became relaxed, and rationing has been gradually cancelled. Chinese farmers "were encouraged to engage in industrial and commercial activities and migrated to cities and towns. The number of people living in places other than their registered home towns doubled from 70 million in 1993 to 140 million in 2000."²¹ Such a situation affected not only the enforcement of birth control policy but also the accuracy of census figures. The Government of China used to tightly control the family planning program by administrative means, such as food rationing, household registration, job and housing allocation, besides economical punishment. These administrative means used to be effective in the 1970s and 1980s when the Chinese society was characteristic of a rigid "dual-system of city/countryside division" --"a system of wage and welfare rewards or rationing that favored urban residents".²² Also, the government had absolute power to control the arrangement of all social resources at that time. From the 1990s, however, with the lessening of the government's intervening in people's economic lives in a market economy system, the official implementation of population control policy lost effect to some extent. Chinese farmers who did not benefit from previous policies had nothing to lose and, thereby, had no fear of being punished due to excessive reproduction. In particular, they had chance to flee from the land and to make lives out of their hometowns, and finally became the "floating population" who were out of the control of local governments to a large extent.

其次，中国的农村移民增加了人口控制的难度。随着30年前从计划经济体制向市场经济体制的过渡，户籍管理松动了一些，配给制也逐步取消了。中国农民“被鼓励进城从事工商业活动。从户籍所在地迁居异地的人口从1993年的7千万翻番到2000年的1.4亿”。这种情况不仅影响到计划生育政策的执行，而且影响到人口普查数据的准确性。中国政府过去通过行政手段，譬如食品配给、户籍登记、就业和住房分配，外加经济处罚来严加控制计划生育。这些行政手段曾在上世纪70~80年代，当时中国社会还是僵化的“城乡二元体制”（即工资和福利或配给仅优惠城镇居民的体制）下乃行之有效，况且当时政府拥有绝对权力来安排一切社会资源。然而从90年代起，在市场经济体制下，随着政府对民众经济生活干预的减少，官方执行计划生育政策在一定程度上失效了。未曾从以

²¹ Liang and Ma, 478.

²² Chen Qin, 370-371.

往政策中受益的农民如今无所畏惧，不怕超生处罚，尤其当他们有机会逃离乡土外出谋生，最终成为在很大程度上地方政府难以控制的“流动人口”时。

Third, the regularity of population reproduction influenced the efficiency of China's birth control program. The development of population has its own periodicity and regularity, (for example, the periodicity of a baby boom usually is 20 to 30 years), which hardly yields to any artificial, coercive measures. Therefore, it is impossible to solve the long-term population problem within one or two generations. For example, owing to China's huge base of fertile population, we can not expect the appearance of a miracle like zero growth of its population before 2050, even taking the strictest "one-child-per-family" policy and the "later-longer-fewer" policy (which targeted three reproductive goals -- "later marriage, longer between first and subsequent children, fewer children."²³ The reality is well-known: China experienced the first baby boom from 1950 to 1958 and the second from 1962 to 1975. China has just passed its third baby boom, and, demographically speaking, it expects to embrace another one between 2020 and 2040 whether it wishes to or not. (to be continued)

第三，人口繁殖规律影响着中国计划生育的成效。人口发展有其自身的周期性和规律性（例如婴儿潮的周期通常为 20~30 年），几乎不为任何人为或强制手段而转移。因此，在一两代人之内难以解决长期的人口问题。比如，由于中国的生育人口基数庞大，我们不能指望在 2050 年之前出现人口零增长的奇迹，哪怕采取最严格的“独生子女”政策和“晚生晚育”政策。众所周知的现实是：中国于 1950~1958 年经历了第一次婴儿潮，1962~1975 年为第二次婴儿潮，又刚刚从第三个生育高峰期通过。人口规律性决定了无论情愿与否，中国都将在 2020~2040 年间迎接另一个生育高峰期。（待续）

²³ Bongaarts and Greenhalgh, 586.

2014 International Congress of Mathematicians in Seoul, South Korea, and a research book published in Europe

2014 年國際數學家國會 于南韓漢城及一本研究 書籍出版于歐洲

Yuan

圓

About 5,000 mathematicians from more than 120 countries participated this spectacular and magnificent International Congress of Mathematicians (held every four years) at COEX in Seoul, South Korea, August 13-21, 2014, for the first time. This ICM focused on the encouragement of a stronger mathematics community in developing countries, and the growing role of women in the mathematics discipline. South Korean President Park Geun-hye presided the opening ceremony of the ICM in the morning on August 13, 2015, and she said, "Korea achieved remarkable economic growth within a short period of time and a parallel advance was achieved in the study of mathematics, in spite of late start." She presented the prestigious mathematical awards to seven recipients as follows: Fields Medals to Artur Avila, Manjul Bhargava, Martin Hairer, and Maryam Mizakhanian who was the first woman to win a medal since awards began in 1936. Chern's Medal to Phillip Griffiths, Nevanlinna Prize to Subhash Khot, and the Carl Friedrich Gauss Prize to Stanley Osher.

2014 年 8 月 13-21 日國際數學家國會(每四年)第一次于南韓漢城舉行, 全世界約 5,000 數學家從 120 多國家參加這隆重壯觀的數學家國會。這數學家國會專注於鼓勵開發中國家們發展數學及婦女參與數學。南韓總統朴槿惠於 8 月 13 日早晨主持國際數學家國會開幕典禮, 她說:「南韓在很短的時間有顯著的經濟成長及同步發展於數學, 儘管他們有一個晚的開始。」她頒發傑出數學獎給七名得獎者: 斐爾茲獎給 Artur Avila, Manjul Bhargava, Martin Hairer, 及 Maryam Mizakhanian, 她是 1936 年來第一位女性得獎者。陳省身獎給 Phillip Griffiths, Nevanlinna 獎給 Subhash Khot, 高斯獎給 Stanley Osher。

This congress' slogan was "Dreams and Hopes for the Late Starters," and the ICM emphasized to put more efforts in developing countries on the international mathematics map. South Korea was a leading example of such transformation, initiated "NANUM 2014," a project to bring 1,000 mathematicians from nearly 100 developing countries in Asia, Latin America and Africa to the congress. Inspired by this cause, the IMU, which oversees the congress, also, included a symposium on developing countries, titled MENAO, or the mathematics in Emerging Nations: Achievements and Opportunities, was held at the COEX.

這屆國際數學家國會的口號是「給晚起步國家們的夢想與希望」, 國會關注於國際世界開發中國家們發展數學的藍圖, 南韓是這轉移的一個領導例子, 他們開創一個計劃 "NANUM 2014," 從亞洲、拉丁美洲、非洲將近 100 國家帶來了 1000 數學家們到國際數學家國會。由此啟發國際數學家聯盟(舉辦國際數學家國會)也在 COEX 舉辦一個開發中國家們發展數學論壇「成績與機會」。

(The following text is technical, there is no need to translate to Chinese.)

Fields Medalists

(1) Professor Artur Avila, CNRS, France & IMPA, Brazil



Citation: “for his profound contributions to dynamical systems theory have changed the face of the field, using the powerful idea of renormalization as a unifying principle.”

Artur Avila was born in Brazil 1979, and he is also a naturalized French citizen. He received his Ph.D. from IMPA in Rio de Janeiro in 2001. He has made outstanding contributions to dynamical systems, partial differential equations, analysis and other areas, including real and complex one-dimensional dynamics, spectral theory of the one-frequency Schrödinger operator, flat billiards and the fractal geometry of Feigenbaum Julia sets. In the spectral theory of one-frequency difference Schrödinger operators, he came up with a global description of the phase transitions between discrete and absolutely continuous spectra, establishing surprising stratified analyticity of the Lyapunov exponent. In the theory of flat billiards, Avila proved a few long-standing conjectures on the ergodic behavior of interval-exchange maps. He made deep advances in the understanding of the stable ergodicity of typical partially hyperbolic systems hyperbolic dynamics.

(2) Professor Manjul Bhargava, Princeton University, USA



Citation: “for developing powerful new methods in the geometry of numbers and applied them to count rings of small rank and to bound the average rank of elliptic curves.”

Munjul Bhargava was born in 1974 in Canada, grew up primarily in the USA and spent much time in India. He received his Ph.D. from Princeton University in 2001. His work in number theory has had a profound influence on the field. His dissertation provided a reformulation of Gauss’s law for the composition of two binary quadratic forms. He showed that the orbits of the group $SL(2, \mathbb{Z})$ on the tensor product of three copies of the standard integral representation correspond to quadratic rings (rings of rank 2 over \mathbb{Z}) together with three ideal classes whose product is trivial. This recovers Gauss’s composition law in an original and computationally effective manner. He then studied orbits in more complicated integral representations, which correspond to cubic, quartic, and quintic rings, and counted the number of such rings with bounded discriminant. He next turned to

the study of representations with a polynomial ring of invariants. The simplest such representation is given by the action of $PGL(2, Z)$ on the space of binary quartic forms. This has two independent invariants, which are related to the moduli of elliptic curves.

(3) **Professor Martin Hairer**, University of Warwick, UK



Citation: **“for his outstanding contributions to the theory of stochastic partial differential equations, and in particular created a theory of regularity structures for such equations.”**

Martin Hairer was born in 1975, and he is an Australian citizen. He received his Ph.D. in physics from the University of Geneva under the direction of Jean-Pierre Eckmann. He has made a major breakthrough in the study of stochastic partial differential equations. A mathematical problem that is important throughout science is to understand the influence of noise on differential equations, and on the long time behavior of the solutions. This problem was solved for ordinary differential equations by Itô in the 1940s. For partial differential equations, a comprehensive theory has proved to be more elusive, and only particular cases (linear equations, tame nonlinearities, etc.) had been treated satisfactorily. Hairer’s work addresses two central aspects of the theory. Together with Mattingly, he employed the Malliavin calculus along with new methods to establish the ergodicity of the two-dimensional stochastic Navier-Stokes equation. Building on the rough-path approach of Lyons for stochastic ordinary differential equations, he then created an abstract theory of regularity structures for stochastic partial differential equations.

(4) **Professor Maryam Mirzakhani**, Stanford University, USA



Citation: **“for her outstanding contributions to the dynamics and geometry of Riemann surfaces and their moduli spaces.”**

Maryam Mirzakhani was born in 1977 in Tehran, Iran, and she received her Ph.D. in Harvard University, where her advisor was Curtis McMullen. She has made a striking advance in the theory of Riemann surfaces and their moduli spaces, and led the way to a new frontier in this area. Her insights have integrated methods from diverse fields, such as algebraic geometry, topology and probability theory. In hyperbolic geometry, Mirzakhani established asymptotic formulas and statistics for the number of simple closed geodesics on a Riemann surface of

genus g . She next used these results to give a new and completely unexpected proof of Witten's conjecture, a formula for characteristic classes for the moduli spaces of Riemann surfaces with marked points. In dynamics, she found a remarkable new construction that bridges the holomorphic and symplectic aspects of moduli space, and used it to show that Thurston's earthquake flow is ergodic and mixing.

Chern Medalist

Professor Phillip Griffiths, Institute for Advanced Study in Princeton, USA

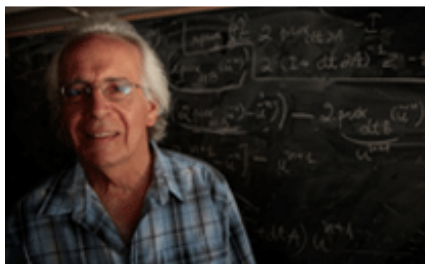


Citation: “**for his groundbreaking and transformative development of transcendental methods in complex geometry, particularly his seminal work in Hodge theory and periods of algebraic varieties.**”

Phillip Griffiths' expertise in algebraic geometry, differential geometry, and differential equations has stimulated a wide range of advances in mathematics over the past 50 years and continues to influence an enormous body of research activity today. He has brought to bear both classical techniques and strikingly original ideas on a variety of problems in real and complex geometry and laid out a program of applications to period mappings and domains, algebraic cycles, Nevanlinna theory, Brill-Noether theory, and topology of Kahler manifolds. Earlier, he made connections between deformation theory and Hodge theory through infinitesimal methods, which led to his discovery of what are now known as the Griffiths infinitesimal period relations. These methods provided the motivation for the Griffiths intermediate Jacobian, which solved the problem of showing algebraic equivalence and homological equivalence of algebraic cycles are distinct. His work with C.H. Clemens on the non-rationality of the cubic threefold became a model for many further applications of transcendental methods to the study of algebraic varieties.

Gauss Prize

Professor Stanley Osher, UCLA, USA



Citation: **“for *his* influential contributions to several fields in applied mathematics, and his far-ranging inventions have changed our conception of physical, perceptual, and mathematical concepts, giving us new tools to apprehend the world.”**

Stanley Osher has made influential contributions in a variety of fields in applied mathematics. These include high resolution shock capturing methods for hyperbolic equations, level set methods, PDE based methods in computer vision and image processing, and optimization. His numerical analysis contributions, including the Engquist-Osher scheme, TVD schemes, entropy conditions, ENO and WENO schemes and numerical schemes for Hamilton-Jacobi type equations have revolutionized the field. His level set contributions include new level set calculus, novel numerical techniques, fluids and materials modeling, variational approaches, high codimension motion analysis, geometric optics, and the computation of discontinuous solutions to Hamilton-Jacobi equations; level set methods have been extremely influential in computer vision, image processing, and computer graphics. In addition, such new methods have motivated some of the most fundamental studies in the theory of PDEs in recent years, completing the picture of applied mathematics inspiring pure mathematics.

Nevanlinna Prize Winner

Professor Subhash Khot, New York University, USA



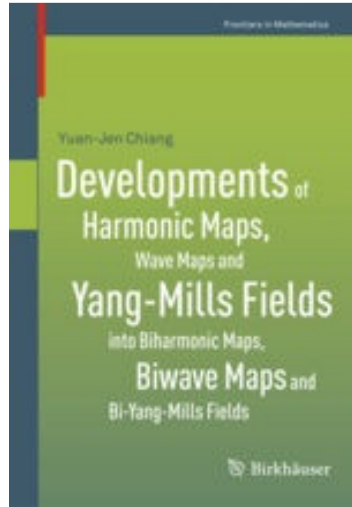
Citation: **“for his prescient definition of the “Unique Games” problem, and his leadership in the effort to understand its complexity and its pivotal role in the study of efficient approximation of optimization problems, have produced breakthroughs in algorithmic design and approximation hardness, and new exciting interactions between computational complexity, analysis and geometry.”**

Subhash Khot defined the “Unique Games” in 2002, and subsequently led the effort to understand its complexity and its pivotal role in the study of optimization problems. Khot and his collaborators demonstrated that the hardness of Unique Games implies a precise characterization of the best approximation factors achievable for a variety of NP-hard optimization problems. This discovery turned the Unique Games problem into a major open problem of the theory of computation. The ongoing quest to study its complexity has had unexpected benefits. First, the reductions used in the above results identified new problems in analysis and geometry, invigorating analysis of Boolean functions, a field at the interface of mathematics and computer science. This led to new central limit theorems, invariance principles, isoperimetric inequalities, and inverse theorems, impacting research in computational complexity, pseudorandomness, learning and combinatorics. Second, Khot and his collaborators used intuitions stemming from their study of Unique Games to yield new lower bounds on the distortion incurred when embedding one metric space into another, as well as constructions of hard families of instances for common linear and semi-definite programming algorithms. This has inspired new work in algorithm design extending these methods, greatly enriching the theory of algorithms and its applications.

There were many well-known professors and outstanding mathematicians delivered great and impressive speeches in 20 sections, and I enjoyed them very much. I presented “On Exponential Harmonic Maps” in Section V: Geometry, on August 14, 2014. This paper has been accepted by *Acta Mathematica Sinica*. I had a wonderful and fruitful time at ICM Seoul 2014.

My research book “**Developments of Harmonic Maps, Wave Maps and Yang-Mills Fields into Biharmonic Maps, Biwave Maps and Bi-Yang-Mills Fields**” published by Birkhäuser, Springer, Basel, in the series of “Frontiers in Mathematics,” xxi+399 pages, 2013. This book was displayed and on sale by Springer at the ICM 2014 Exhibition Center.

Professors Eells and Sampson did a joint paper “Harmonic Maps of Riemannian Manifolds” in American Journal of Math in 1964, which is considered as the pioneering work on harmonic maps. This book was in memory of Eells and Sampson as follows: “**The names of these two pioneers of the theory of harmonic maps will be engraved in the minds of all mathematicians who work on harmonic maps, wave maps and Yang-Mills fields, for their great and everlasting contributions.**”



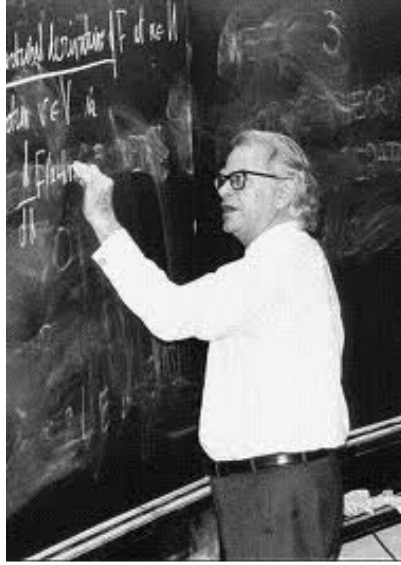
<http://springer.com/birkhauser/mathematics/book/978-3-0348-0533-9>

This book contains 9 Chapters: 1. Harmonic Maps, 2. Wave Maps, 3. Yang-Mills Fields, 4. Biharmonic Maps, 5. Biwave Maps, 6. Bi-Yang-Mills Fields, 7. Exponential Harmonic Maps, 8. Exponential Wave Maps, 9. Exponential Yang-Mills Connections.

I invited Dr. Andrea Ratto (he received his Ph.D. from Professor J. Eells) in Italy to write a joint article: “**Paying Tribute to James Eells and Joseph H. Samson: In Commemoration of the 50th Anniversary of Their Pioneering Work on Harmonic Maps**” <http://ams.org/notices/201504> has appeared in the April Issue of the **Notices of American Mathematical Society** in 2015.

References:

1. ICM Seoul 2014 Program Book.
2. ICM Seoul 2014 Abstracts.
3. ICM Seoul 2014 Newsletters.
4. Y. Chiang, On Exponentially Harmonic Maps accepted by *Acta Mathematica Sinica*.
5. Y. Chiang and A. Ratto, Paying Tribute to James Eells and Joseph H. Samson: In Commemoration of the 50th Anniversary of Their Pioneering Work on Harmonic Maps, April issue, *Notices of American Mathematical Society*, 2015.



Professor James Eells (1926-2007)



Professor Joseph H. Sampson (1926-2003)

Dr. Winston C. Chow

周棋博士

Some descriptions here are inferred conjectures, but, based on biographies, these conjectures do seem very plausible.

這些描述是推斷的猜想，但是基於傳記，這些猜測看起來是很有道理。

Rosalind Franklin was a pioneer chemist who made critical contributions to understanding the molecular structure of the DNA molecule. In addition to work on the DNA, she also contributed greatly to understanding virus structure and to research on coal. Yet she often had to endure very adverse conditions for which she persevered and thrived. Unfortunately disease terminated her life at an early age of 37, ending her eager pursuit of scientific knowledge.

羅莎琳德·佛(富)蘭克林是一個先驅的化學家，她的關鍵貢獻是理解 DNA 的分子結構。除了 DNA 的分子結構，她還理解病毒結構和作煤的研究。然而，她常常得忍受很不利的環境，她堅持下來並蓬勃發展。但很不幸地，疾病使她在 37 歲時終止了生命，結束她對科學熱切的追求。

Franklin performed very important pioneering work in X-ray crystallography on DNA. This is required in order to reveal its detailed molecular structure. X-ray crystallography is a process by which X-rays are sent through crystals of chemical compounds, and diffraction patterns from the X-ray are used to reveal molecules structures.

富蘭克林用 X-光射線結晶學在 DNA (脫氧核糖核酸) 作了非常重要的先驅工作，這揭示 DNA 的詳細分子結構。X-光射線結晶學是一個過程，X-光射線通過化合物的晶體和用 X-光射線衍射模式揭示分子的結構。

Franklin was born on July 25, 1920 in London, England during times when women were often not encouraged to become scientists. She was born in a prominent family and was one of five children. At age 15 Rosalind Franklin decided she wanted to be a scientist. She excelled in her studies, despite that the educational system of the time discouraged women from high education. She received a PhD at Cambridge University in physical chemistry in 1945. She was never married and had no children.

富蘭克林於 1920 年 7 月 25 日出生在英國倫敦，當時婦女往往不被鼓勵成為科學家。她出生在一個有名的家庭，五個孩子之一。15 歲的時候羅莎琳德·佛蘭克林決定要成為一名科學家。她最擅長研究，儘管教育系統阻止婦女高等教育。她于 1945 年在劍橋大學拿到物理化學博士學位。她從未結過婚，沒有孩子。

During her career, Rosalind Franklin endured adverse working conditions due to poor workplace conditions, World War II, low pay, conflicts and friction with co-workers, for which some biographers believed to be in part gender related, and finally her illness. Dr. Franklin's very much assertive personality perhaps may have also enhanced some of the conflicts. Her crucial role in DNA research was not readily recognized during her lifetime. Even when stricken by ovarian cancer, she still worked passionately until very shortly before the disease took her life.

在她職業生涯中，羅莎琳德·佛蘭克林忍受惡劣的工作環境，由於工作場所的不良條件，第二次世界大戰，低工資與同事的衝突和摩擦，根據一些傳記作家認為這與性別有關，最後影響她的病情。富蘭克林博士堅定自信的性格也許可能亦增加一些衝突。她在 DNA

的關鍵研究，在她的一生在她健在時沒有輕易地被承認，即使遭受卵巢癌，直到她逝世不久之前，她仍然熱情地工作。

How is this related to Chinese culture? Endurance was encouraged in traditional Chinese culture. Many years ago, my late Dad explained how a traditional Chinese coin was shaped. It was round on the outside perimeter but had a square hole in the middle. He said the outside perimeter can be thought as representing a person's dealing with people and the outside world. The square hole can be considered as representing the real person and his/her character. Thus regardless to favorable or adverse environments, people can still evaluate themselves from the inside and keep their self-esteem.

這與中國文化有關如何？傳統中國文化鼓勵忍耐力。許多年前，我的先父解釋傳統的中國硬幣形狀。它的週邊是圓，但中間有一個方孔。他說：圓的週邊可視為代表一個人處理外面的世界。中間的方孔可視為代表真實的人和他/她的性格。因此無論在有利或不利的環境中，人們仍然可以從裡面評價自己並保持他們的自尊。

Rosalind Franklin must surely have known at heart she had great scientific talents and a mission to pioneer the frontiers of knowledge. That can be represented by the square hole inside the Chinese coin. From biographical descriptions of her character, we are led to believe she probably did not allow adverse outside environments, represented by the round outside coin perimeter, to demoralize her dignity. So she seemed to remain cheerful and peaceful.

羅莎琳德·佛蘭克林肯定知道她有偉大的科學天才和一個使命來開拓知識的新領域，此類似中國錢幣中間的方孔；從她的傳記描述，她不允許外部有害環境，奪取她的尊嚴，類似中國錢幣圓的週邊，她保持快樂和平安。

Rosalind Franklin died on April 16, 1938 a few months before her 38th birthday. Posthumously Rosalind Franklin's legacy is now highly recognized. Finch University of Health Sciences / The Chicago Medical School in North Chicago, IL was renamed Rosalind Franklin University of Medicine and Science in 2004.

羅莎琳德·佛蘭克林在她 38 歲生日前幾個月，於 1938 年 4 月 16 日逝世。她的功績，現在已被承認。雀科健康科學大學/北芝加哥醫學院在 2004 年改名為羅莎琳德·佛蘭克林醫學和科學大學，為了紀念她的貢獻。

Bibliography

參考書目:

en.wikipedia.org , http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rosalind_Franklin; January 2015
Huffington Post, "Obsessed: Rosalind Franklin" Posted 04/27/2012 see Web at
http://www.huffingtonpost.com/theresa-esquerra/obsessed-rosalind-franklin_b_1458530.html
Rosalind Franklin Scientists Who Made History by Cath Senker, c. 2003, Steck-Vaughn Company, Austin TX
San Diego Supercomputer Center, University of California, San Diego, "Women in Science A Selection of 16 Significant Contributors", c 1997 See pdf at Web <https://www.sdsc.edu/ScienceWomen/GWIS.pdf>

Research Universities in China: Basic Concepts, Characteristics and Proposed Strategic Policies (2)

研究型大学的基本概念特征 及其建设对策 (2)

Hongyi Zhao
Xian, China

赵弘毅
中國西安

摘要 概述了研究型大学概念的内涵及其演变；阐明了研究型大学的主要特征；提出了创建研究型大学的主要对策。

Abstract: This paper briefly interprets the basic concepts, characteristics and evolutions of research universities in China. It then proposes the strategic policies of research universities in China.

关键词 研究型大学 概念 特征 建设对策

Keywords: Research university, concept, characteristic, strategic policy.

（三）研究型大学师资力量雄厚，集聚有一流的学术大师，培育一流的精英人才。

大学的荣誉与水平，在很大程度上取决于教师和管理者的品质与水平，特别是“具有强有力的、公正的、公共管理和果断负责的校长”。国外研究型大学，不但拥有在社会上很有声望的著名校长，而且拥有一批致力于创造新知识的研究型教师，特别是一流的学术大师。这是研究型大学最鲜明的旗帜和最显著的特征，因为他们不但具有高超的学术水平，决定着大学实力的大小、教学质量的高低和学术的贡献，而且具有坚忍不拔的精神风骨、超凡的志气与才气，影响着学校的声誉。他们带领学术团队，集天下英才而育之，以培育高层次精英人才为已任。在美国，由于大学之外，包括国家科学院系统没有高级学位授予系统，也不培养研究生，人才培养完全集中在高校，高层次人才培养又集中在研究型大学。美国研究型大学仅占全美各类大学的 6%左右，（也有人说只占 4%或者 5%），但却授予了全国 1/3 的学士学位，40%的硕士学位和 80%的博士学位。许多研究型大学都实施“教授治校”，强调“人才强校”，致力于培养能济世安邦的领军人物、甚至领袖人才。美、英许多杰出的政治家、科学家、理论家、教育家、企业家、社会活动家、学术大师、治国志士、兴业之才，都出自研究型大学。比如，成立于 1636 年的哈佛大学，培养出了 6 位美国总统，33 位诺贝尔奖获得者，32 位普利策奖获得者；成立于 1868 年的伯克利加州大学，教师中有 112 位美国国家科学院院士，68 位国家工程院院士，在 130 多年历史中，有 18 位获诺贝尔奖。英国剑桥大学造就了 80 位诺贝尔奖得主，3 位英国首相，以及凯恩思、罗素、李约瑟、印度前总统尼赫鲁·拉·甘地、马来西亚前总统拉赫曼、新加坡前总统李光耀等国际著名科学家与政治家；牛津大学毕业生中，也产生了 29 位英国首相，21 位诺贝尔奖得主。“911”之后，美国研究型大学更加强调培养拔尖人才发展战略，已从提高国家综合国力转移到提高美国的全球竞争力上，要求造就国际专家，开发国际知识，满足国家全球战略需要，提高解决全球问题的能力，开发具备全球竞争力的国民和劳动力。

(3) Strong faculty recourses with first-class academic gurus, cultivating first-class elites

The reputation and ranking of a university depends largely on the quality of faculty and administrators, in particular, “a strong, fair, responsible, and decisive president.” Western research universities not only have a great well-known president with great reputation, but also own a group research faculty members dedicated to creating new knowledge, as well as first-class academic elites. This is the hallmark and banner of distinctive features of a research university. These people have excellent academic expertise and determine the strength of a university, the quality of teaching, and academic contributions to knowledge. They have indomitable spirit, extraordinary ambitions and talents, which affect a university's reputation. They lead academic teams, recruit elites, and foster high-level talents. In the U.S., other research institutions, including the National Academy of Sciences system award few advanced degrees. High level education and personnel training are exclusively carried out in universities, especially in research universities. American research universities account for only 6% of the nation's various universities (some say only 4% or 5%), but award 33% of the bachelor degrees, 40% of the master degrees, and 80% of the Ph.D. degrees in whole nation. Many research universities have implemented “faculty run universities”, stressed “faculty’s accomplishments and expertise determine the strength of universities”, and trained leaders capable of managing the nation. In the United States and Britain, many prominent politicians, scientists, theorists, educators, entrepreneurs, social activists, academic experts graduate from research universities. For example, Harvard University founded in 1636, has produced six U.S. presidents, 33 Nobel laureates, 32 Pulitzer Prize winners. University of California at Berkeley founded in 1868, owns 112 academicians in the United States National Academy of Sciences and 68 academicians in National Academy of Engineering, 18 Nobel Prize laureates. Cambridge University has created 80 Nobel Prize laureates, three British Prime Ministers, and a group of elites. Oxford University has produced 29 British prime ministers, 21 Nobel Prize laureates. Since September 11, 2011, American research universities place more emphasis on training top-notch talents, switching from improving the nation's comprehensive strength to improving America's global competitiveness. They satisfy the demands of creating experts with international insights and knowledge develop global strategies to meet national needs, solve global problems, and produce globally competitive talents and work forces.

(四) 研究型大学高度注重科学研究，奉行科研立校理念。

科研立校思想，最早是德国大学提出的，后来传到了美国。在美国研究型大学中一般都设有众多的对学校事业发展和周边地区发展乃至国家发展有着巨大影响，用于研究、开发和社会服务的研究所（室）或中心，学校具有厚重的学术基础、雄厚的科研实力，优秀的学术底气，以及强有力的创新原动力，开展卓有成效的研究工作。研究型大学已成为国家和区域科技、文化创新的主力军，其研究水平决定着国家的研究实力与水平，这是研究型大学非常鲜明的特色。由于美国的国家科学院与工程科学院系统不具有实质性研究的功能，国家重大基础研究，责无旁贷地落在研究型大学。联邦政府实验室、特别是基础研究实验室都设在研究型大学，基础研究的 50%以上依赖于研究型大学。1998 年全美用于研究的经费 263 亿美元，其中 67%用于了基础研究。各大学的研究内容也都非常注重基础研究或纯科学研究，旨在获取新知，探索未知，追求科学真理；特别重视学科的交叉渗透和跨学科研究，关注不同学科领域的新突破，催生新科学、新思想；同时重视基础研究对

人类认识世界、改造世界，发展经济与社会进步的巨大作用；即使提供社会服务，不论是研究性服务、教学性服务还是政府机构咨询服务，都是以研究为基础和学术水平为特色。学校要求教师不但要自己研究，还要为研究生开发一项重要研究项目，启动研究计划，并为研究生参与研究和实践寻求资助；要求本科教学也同研究相结合，为本科生参与科研创造机会。研究型大学对教师研究成果十分重视，教师的聘任、晋职更多地取决于自己的研究成果及其发展前景，而非教学水平与服务业绩。因此，研究型大学的研究成果非常卓著，比如 DNA 发现于剑桥；基因工程诞生于斯坦福；对整个世界发展进程具有重大影响的研究成果——雷达、原子弹、固体燃料火箭和无线电电子引信都出自于研究型大学。据统计，至今为止，全世界足以影响人类生存与生活方式转变的重大科研成果，70%都出自一流的研究型大学，全世界获诺贝尔奖科研成果的 75%也来自研究型大学，在美国高达 80%以上，比如 1993—1996 年全世界共获诺贝尔物理、化学、生物和医学、经济学奖的 35 人中，25 人为美国人，占 71%，其中 23 人来自美国研究型大学，占美国人获奖的 92%，占全世界获此奖人数的 65.7%。因此，有人说，学术研究成了“美国教师和学生的指南与激励器。”

(4) Highly emphasize research and develop a research based university philosophy

The idea of research based universities was first proposed in Germany and was later adopted by the United States. Research universities in the United States usually have many institutes or centers for R&D and offer social services locally and nationwide. Universities have strong research tradition and capability, excellence academic environment, and a strong driving force for innovation and effective research. Research universities have played a critical role in regional and national science and technology development, as well as cultural innovation. Research results determine the level of national research capability and level of research competency. This is the distinctive characteristics of research universities. As the U.S. National Academy of Sciences and Engineering Research system do not have sufficient basic research, the duty has fallen on research universities. Many national laboratories, particularly basic research laboratories, are located in research universities; more than 50% of basic research depends on the research universities. In 1998, 67% of U.S. research funding (\$ 26.3 billion) was allocated to basic research. Research universities have paid much attention to basic research or pure scientific research, to obtain new knowledge, explore the unknown, and pursue scientific truths. Special attention is also paid to cross-disciplinary and interdisciplinary research penetration, new breakthroughs in different fields of interest, new sciences and innovations. Meanwhile research universities conduct research on understanding the world and transforming the world, economic development and social progress. Teaching and consulting services for government agencies are all characterized with research features and academic standards. University faculty members are required not only to do their own research, but also to develop graduate research projects and seek fundings for graduate research and practice. In addition, undergraduate research is combined with teaching to create opportunities for undergraduate participation in research activities. When hiring and promoting faculty, research universities have put greater weights on the results of research and development than teaching and service performance. Therefore, research results are remarkable in research universities, such as DNA found at Cambridge and genetic engineering born at Stanford. Many inventions developed in research universities, such as radar, atomic, solid-fuel rockets and radio-electronic have impact on whole world development and progress. According to statistics, so far, among the worldwide research results

that have changed human history and life style, 70% are from top research universities. Around the world, 75% of Nobel Prize-winning scientific researches are conducted in research universities. In the United States, this number is up to 80% or more. For instance, from 1993 to 1996, among the 35 Nobel laureates, who shared the Nobel Prizes in Physics, chemistry, biology and medicine, economics, 25 are American (71%). Of those people, 23 are from the American research universities, accounting for 92% in the US and 65.7% worldwide. It is said that academic research has become “a guide and stimulator for faculty and students in the United States”.

(五) 研究型大学实行门户开放, 在开放、合作与社会互动中崛起。

美、英大学, 特别是研究型大学, 不论地处城市或农村, 都是实行门户开放, 面向社会, 面向全国乃至全世界的, 都同社会融为一体, 同企业存在着科技开发关系、人力资源发展关系和经营发展关系。学校在同工业联合中, 不但获得了丰厚的经费支持, 为师生提供了实践基地, 而且获得了源源不断的新思想、新技术、新生力量的注入。许多研究型大学都是在开放、合作、与社会互动中崛起的。比如, 始建于 1636 年的美国哈佛大学, 初建时只是个培养神学传教士的哈佛学院, 到美国独立时才有 40 多个毕业生。它之所以快速发展成为著名的综合性研究型大学, 缘于它的第 6 任在位 40 余年的校长查尔斯·艾略特, 抓住了美国南北战争后社会转型—由松散的农村组织向城市化、工业化方向转移的机遇, 及时适应社会转型对高层次人才的迫切需求, 加强同企业合作, 将学校由以宗教性学科为重心, 转到与社会现实需要密切相关的学科, 由大学本科转向研究生教育, 并创立了自由选课制度, 使学校迅速崛起, 成为全球一流。始建于 1891 年的斯坦福大学, 在上世纪 20 年代时, 还是一所二流的“乡村大学”, 1944 学校适应社会需要, 制定了未来 20 年发展规划, 提出将学校办成研究与开发中心, 并与工厂、企业紧密联合, 1951 年又首创大学科技园, 形成了以斯坦福大学、加州大学伯克利分校为中心的“硅谷”, 使学校迅速成为世界一流大学。正如该校校长曾说: “人们都说没有斯坦福就没有硅谷, 我还要加一句, 没有硅谷, 就没有一流水平的斯坦福大学”。再如, 英国剑桥大学是英国历史上最悠久的大学, 但长期囿于“象牙塔”办学理念, 发展很慢。20 世纪 60 年代, 转变办学理念, 开放办学资源, 拓展社会服务功能, 积极开展同产业界互动, 先后创办了剑桥科学园和圣约翰创新中心, 使其成为全英乃至欧洲高科技产业和人才最密集地区, 实现了著名的“剑桥飞跃”。被英国前首相布莱尔誉为“英国大学灯塔”的沃尔克大学, 1965 年才建校, 短短 40 余年就跻身于世界著名的研究型大学, 其关键也在于开放办学。它于 1980 年组建了沃尔克制造集团, 迅速成为欧洲最大的研究生工程科研与发展中心; 1984 年又组建了股份制形式的全英第二个大学科技园—沃尔克大学科技园, 形成了大学、政府、企业合作互动平台, 实现了科技成果与产品直接对接, 促进了大学的发展。1991 年 10 月才建校的我国香港科技大学, 只所以能在很短时间内跨入世界大学百强之列, 其关键也在于开放、创新, 不但优化了内部组织结构, 而且在开放、合作、服务社会价值观念指导下, 构建了同政府、企业合作的机制, 强调同政府、企业通力合作, 为社会服务。近几年, 我国内地许多著名大学也创办了一批大学科技园或示范基地, 实行开放式办学, 已显示出了崛起的活力, 促进了创建研究型大学的进程。

(5) Implement open-door policy and cooperate with the society

Many U.S. and British universities, especially research universities, whether located in urban or rural, implement an open door policy for local community, the nation, and worldwide. Research activities are integrated with social, scientific and technological development. When collaborating with industry, universities have not only gained the financial support for research and industrial practice bases for students, but also obtain a steady stream of new ideas, new technologies, and new driving forces. Many research universities rise in an open, cooperative, social interactive environment. For example, Harvard College founded in 1636, was first developed to primarily train Congregationalist and Unitarian clergy. There were only 40 graduates when United States became independent. The reason it became well known rapidly as a comprehensive research university is largely due to its 6th President Charles Eliot. Under Eliot, Harvard became a worldwide university. Harvard accepts its students all over America using standardized exam and hiring well-known scholars from home and abroad. During Eliot's forty year presidency, the university vastly expanded its facilities, with laboratories, libraries, classrooms, and athletic facilities replacing simple colonial structures. Eliot seized the American social transformation after the Civil War, attracted the support of major donors from among the nation's growing plutocracy, making it the wealthiest private university in the world. Founded in 1891, Stanford University was a second-rate "rural university" in the 1920s. In 1944, the university satisfied the needs of the social development and proposed its 20 years development plan, encouraging faculty and graduates to start their own companies. It perceived exploitation of the West at the hands of eastern interests fueled booster-like attempts to build self-sufficient indigenous local industry. Thus, regionalism helped align Stanford's interests with those of the area's high-tech firms for the first fifty years of Silicon Valley's development. The university rapidly became a world-class university. As the university president said: "It is said there is no Silicon Valley without Stanford, I would like to add that without Silicon Valley, there is no world-class Stanford University." Another example is University of Cambridge, the oldest British universities. Long-term "ivory tower" educational philosophy led to its low development. In 1960s, the university changed its educational philosophy and opened its educational resources, expanded social services, and actively interacted with industry. The university founded the Cambridge Science Park and St. John's Innovation Centre and became British and even European high-tech industries center. The university is closely linked with the development of the high-tech business clusters in and around Cambridge, which forms the area known as Silicon Fen or sometimes the "Cambridge Phenomenon." Warwick University founded in 1965, was praised by former British Prime Minister Tony Blair as a "beacon of British universities." Warwick is one of Britain's newest and finest research universities, singled out by Blair as a model both of academic excellence and independence from the government. Within only 40 years, it becomes one of the world's leading research universities. The key factor is also its open door policy. In 1980, Warwick created Warwick manufacturing group, which quickly became Europe's largest graduate engineering research and development center. In 1984, it developed a Science Park - Warwick University of Science and Technology Park, forming a universities and government interactive platform for business cooperation to convert scientific and technological results to products directly, and to promote the university development. China's Hong Kong University of Science and Technology, founded in October 1991, becomes one of the top 100 universities in the world in a very short time. The key factor is still open door and innovation policy, which not only optimizes the internal organizational structure, and but also builds cooperative mechanism between government and industry. In recent years, many well known

universities in China have started to develop university science parks and implement open door policy to promote the process of creating research universities.

(六) 研究型大学财源广阔，经费充足，拥有足够的资金支持学校研究、教学及其他功能的充分发挥。

美国研究型大学不论公立还是私立，其办学资金都有广泛的来源，包括联邦政府财政拨款、学费、公共部门和私营企业的赠款，及其所支付的开发与服务合同项目资助、辅助性服务费、捐赠基金与私人赠款等。美国州立研究型大学的研究工作、研究生教育及其职业教育都是面向全国、全世界的，然而基本资助却来自州政府的财政拨款，拨款数约占学校经费总收入的 50%—60%；研究型大学的学费高于一般大学，私立比公立高出一倍以上，其学费收入占总收入 1/3 左右；从联邦政府和服务项目中获得的资助也很可观；捐赠基金与私人赠款比例较少，但却为学校提供了十分必要的机动经费。私立大学获得捐赠相当丰厚，由个人捐款建立起来的斯坦福大学和芝加哥大学，2001/2002 年获得社会捐赠达 239 亿美元。哈佛大学已获得捐赠资金达 349 亿美元。

由于成功吸引外部资助，特别是联邦政府资助，研究型大学的办学经费一般都相当充足。一个学校的年经费收入大都在十几亿甚至几十亿美元以上。比如，2003 年哈佛大学收入 25 亿美元，斯坦福大学、华盛顿大学各 23 亿美元；哥伦比亚大学 21 亿美元，麻省理工学院 18 亿美元，哈佛大学基金市场经济价值已达 193 亿美元。英国研究型大学经费收入少于美国，但剑桥、牛津、伦敦大学年收入也在 9 亿美元以上。各大学除正常收入外，临时所获建设费也很可观，比如伯克利加州大学 1998/1999 学年度办学经费收入 12.07 亿美元（联邦政府与州政府占 59%），2003 年达 18 亿美元，当年 5 月新建加州大学交叉学科研究中心，首期投入达 1.632 亿美元；该校为使物理学领导世界物理新潮流，2006 年新建物理科学大楼投入就高达 1.08 亿美元。由于办学经费充足，美国公立研究型大学生均年支出 40400 美元，私立大学生均年支出 14800 美元。各校实验设备、图书情报都是世界一流的，耶鲁大学图书馆藏书 914.4 万册，哈佛大学图书馆藏书达 1149.7 万册，现刊多达 9.1 万种。这就从物质上保证了教学、研究的高水平。

(6) Extensive financial resources to support research, teaching and services

American research universities, whether public or private, have vast financial resources, including federal government funds, tuition, public and private grants, and the payment of service contracts, ancillary services fees, and endowments. In state research universities, research projects, graduate and professional educations are open to entire nation and the whole world. The basic funding comes from state government financial allocation. The funding appropriation accounts for 50%-60 % of overall resources. Tuitions of research universities are higher than those of teaching universities. Private universities tuition is twice of that in public universities, accounting for about 1/3 of total revenues. Federal government funding and service fees are also significant. Endowment funds and private grants are relatively small, but essential for universities. For instance, Stanford University and University of Chicago established by individual donations, raised \$ 23.9 billion in 2001-2002. Harvard University received donated funds totaling \$ 34.9 billion.

Because of the success in attracting external funding, especially federal funding, research universities are generally quite adequate of financial resources. The annual budget of a research university is usually more than a billion or even billions of dollars. For example, in 2003, Harvard University's budget was \$2.5 billion; Stanford University and Washington obtained \$ 2.3 billion separately; Columbia University, \$ 2.1 billion, and Massachusetts Institute of Technology \$ 1.8 billion. Harvard University's market value has reached to \$ 19.3 billion. Funding for UK research universities is less than U.S., but Cambridge, Oxford, and University of London all have more than \$ 900 million annually. In addition to the normal income of the universities, the temporary construction grants received are also significant. For instance, in 1998-1999 academic years, the University of California-Berkeley's operating budget is \$ 1.207 billion (federal and state governments accounted for 59%). In 2003, it reached to \$1.8 billion. When developing the new interdisciplinary research center of University of California, the university's first phase investment was over \$ 163.2 million. In 2006, the physics building cost as high as \$ 108 million. Its physics program is one of the best in the world. As the universities' findings are adequate in U.S. research universities, each student spends \$ 40,400 in public universities and \$ 14,800 in private university annually. University laboratory equipments, library and information are all world-class; For instance, Yale University library collection is 9.144 million volumes and Harvard University library collection is 11.497 million volume and up to 91,000 types of current periodicals, which ensure teaching and research are conducted at a high level.

(七) 研究型大学高度重视精神文化建设，不断增强校园文化的多样性与先进性。

大学的发展壮大不仅取决于拥有大师、大楼和先进的实验设施等硬件条件，而且取决于软件的优劣，包括塑造良好的人文、学术环境，即精神文化的构建、凝练与影响。文化是一个民族的灵魂与精神之源，也是一所大学发展壮大的灵魂与内在动力。作为国家和社会具有文化主导优势和精神文明传布载体的大学，具有引领社会创新文化的角色优势、资源优势与导向优势。大学的地位、作用与基本功能，决定了大学文化必须以创新文化为主导，并增强校园文化的多样性与先进性。国外研究型大学成了创新文化的摇篮，他们把构建和营造大学文化，特别是创新文化，增强校园文化多元化氛围，作为自己的重要职责。精心培育先进、深厚、前瞻的大学精神文化；持续建设独特、典雅、人文的大学物质文化；积极导引理性、宽容、高效的大学行为文化；努力营造科学、民主、平等、实效的大学制度文化；充分发扬光大追求科学、崇尚真理，学术自由，理性批判，鼓励创新，合作竞争的现代大学精神，使师生生活、工作在科学、民主、自由、平等、宽松、包容、开放、进取的先进校园文化氛围中，几乎是中外所有创建研究型大学中都关注的重点。

(7) Emphasize the importance of spiritual & cultural issues and enhance campus diversity

The growth and development of research universities depends not only on infrastructures, advanced laboratory facilities, and other hardware conditions, but also on the merits of the software, including cultural and academic environment, i.e. spiritual and cultural constructs and impact. Culture heritages the soul of a nation and is the source of its spirit. It is also an inner drive and the soul of development and growth. As a dominant carrier of a nation's cultural and spiritual civilization, a university plays a leading role in social and cultural innovation and

orientation. The status, role and basic functions of a university, determines that the university culture must be a culture of innovation and diversity. Research universities are a cradle of culture innovation. They create and develop university culture, especially the culture of innovation, and enhance cultural diversity on campus as their important duties. Carefully nurture the spirit of university culture; continue building a unique, elegant, humanistic university material culture; actively guide rational, tolerant, and efficient behavior; make efforts to create a scientific and democratic system; respect for truth, academic freedom, rational criticism; encourage innovation; the spirit of cooperation and competition, all these ensure that that faculty and students can live and work in a culture of science, democracy, freedom, equality, liberal, tolerant, open environment. These are the characteristics of almost all Chinese and international research universities.

(八) 研究型大学办学自主，知识独立，学术自由，具有宽广的国际视野。

美国研究型大学的一个突出特点是，远离政府的控制，具有非常大的办学自主权。美国没有国家直属大学，州立大学除遵守州宪法外，同州政府不存在领导与被领导关系，更不是政府的附属物，顶多由州教育协调委员会做些协调工作。学校行政与政府其他机构相分离，政府也不干预学校内部行政、业务，学校享有完全独立的办学自主权。大学的校长及其他领导成员也不由政府或党派委任，而是拥有社会声望与影响的社会人士组成的具有独立法人地位的大学董事会聘任，其任期视其业绩而定，没有党派、性别、年龄与 4 年任期之限制，比如哈佛大学建校 317 年以来，只有 28 任校长，平均任期 11.3 年，其中第 6 任校长任期长达 40 余年，今年刚上任的哈佛第 28 任女校长德鲁·福斯特已年逾 59 岁，如果放在中国很难走马上任了。而我国据对 1792 所高校调查，校长平均任期仅 4.1 年，这怎能不产生短期行为？

知识独立、学术自由的特点在美国研究型大学中更为突出，教师在行使职责时，除享受宪法保护的言论自由权以外，可以自由地追求知识，自由地发表作品，无需担心被同事、学校、政府或党派等外部因素的干扰或制裁。也就是说，研究型大学的教师的言论与学术研究及其交流没有禁区，在合法聘期内，不会因其研究工作的知识内容缘故而被解聘。教师开展科学研究，参与国内外广泛的学术交流活动，不受任何限制，享有真正的学术自由。

总之，当今世界，凡是真正称得上研究型大学的，都是国际著名的一流大学，拥有一流的师资，一流的生源，一流的学科，一流的设备，一流的科研，一流的社会服务，一流的科学管理，一流的国际化表现，都在高层次精英人才培养，高水平科学研究，重大科研成果转化，文化创新，社会服务等方面，拥有独特优势，具有鲜明特色，在国际享有崇高社会声望。

(8) Administration autonomy, intellectual independence, academic freedom, and broad international perspective

A prominent feature of American research universities is the loose control of government and administration. Except for military universities and colleges, there are no national universities in the US. State universities comply with state law, but they are not a subordination of a state government. At most, a State Education Coordinating Board does some coordination work. School administration separates from other government agencies and the government does not intervene in the internal administration and operations of universities. Universities enjoy autonomy. University presidents and other leading administrative members are not appointed by the government or political parties. They are selected in terms of performance and calibre by an

independent board of visitors consisting of social prestigious and influential people. There are no party, gender, age and 4-year term restrictions. For example, Harvard University with 317 years history has only 28 presidents, the average term is 11.3 years. Its sixth president served for 40 years. The newly appointed 28th female president Drew Faust is over 60 years old. In China she has no way to take a president office in a university. According to the survey to 1792 universities, Chinese university presidents have only 4.1 years term on average, which inevitably leads to short-term behavior.

Intellectual independence and academic freedom are more prominent characteristics in American research universities. Faculty members enjoy the constitutional protection of freedom of expression. They can pursue knowledge and publish their work without fear of government or party interference or external factors such as sanctions. Free speech and academic research and idea exchange are not restricted. Faculty can conduct scientific research and perform a wide range of domestic and international academic exchange with no restriction.

In short, true research universities have international reputation, world leading faculty, first-class students, first-class programs, first-class facilities, first-class research results, first-class services, first-class administration, and first-class international performance, high-level talents, advanced culture, social services, unique advantages, and high social prestige in the world.

The Black and White Faces Of the Emperor Yong-Zheng

雍正皇帝的黑白兩面

S. H. Leong, Ph.D.

梁蓀河博士

Introduction

I am not a historian by profession, and in particular not a specialist in Qing Dynasty history. What little I know about Chinese history came mostly from newspaper, popular magazines, and the most important source of all, Chinese martial-arts novels. The veracities of these sources are highly questionable as exemplified by their influence on my impression of the Emperor Yong-Zheng. Most popular sources, in particular, martial arts novels, described him as a cruel sovereign who enjoyed killing innocent people and used terrorism to rule his empire. Was the Emperor Yong-Zheng a simple one-dimensional personality who can be characterized as a sovereign who ruled by terror? The Hollywoodish hyperboles aside, how far is this impression of the emperor deviating from reality? We know from historical records that he was a meticulous administrator and an extremely hard worker who took only one day off a year on his birthday. To illustrate the complexity of the Emperor Yong-Zheng as a ruler, I shall extract some material from a fascinating book entitled “Treason by the Book, Ref.[1]”, by Professor Jonathon D. Spence, Sterling Professor of history at Yale University. As with many of Professor Spence’s books, the material of this book came mostly directly from historical official documents instead of from other history books.

序言

我既不是職業歷史學家,更不是清代歷史專家。我對中國歷史的皮毛認識只是來自報章,雜誌,和最重要的來源是武俠小說。這些材料的歷史正確性當然是一個疑問。但是這些刊物直接影響到我對雍正皇帝的觀點與評價。這些作者,尤其是武俠小說作家,絕大多數都說[雍正皇帝]是一個殘酷君皇,濫殺無辜,依靠恐怖手法來統治他的政權。我們可以把雍正皇帝刻劃成是一個單純人物,只會用殘酷的手段來維持政權嗎?要是我們除掉[好萊塢]式的誇張,我們對雍正皇帝的印象離事實有多遠呢?從各種歷史文件裏,我們知道他是一個極致精細而勤勞的行政者。每年他只有在他生日那天才休息一天。要顯示雍正皇帝是一個非常複雜的人物,我們現在引用一本很有趣的書籍。作者是耶魯大學歷史系名教授史景遷。這本書的題目,我現在翻譯成[秀才造反,照書行事];請看附註[1]。如同史教授其他的著作一樣,這本書的材料是來自清代的官方公文,而不是來自其他的歷史書籍。

Introduction of Characters

Emperor Yong-Zheng (1678-1735): The fourth son of Emperor Kang-Xi with the given name of Yin-Zhen, and became the third emperor of the Qing Dynasty after the Manchus became the rulers of China in 1644. He reigned with the title of Yong-Zheng from 1722 until 1735, just short of 13 years. His succession to the throne was extremely controversial as a fierce struggle took place among the princes and when he had finally ascended to the throne, a number of his brothers die in prison.

Yue Zhong-Qi (1686-1754): He was the 21st generation descendant of Yue Fei, a national hero who led the Chinese army in the Song Dynasty (960-1278) more than 600 years ago against the same northern tribes which had conquered the Ming Dynasty in 1644. His governmental functionary position was governor-general of Shanxi and Sichuan Provinces. His military position was commander of the Western Military Region. Such lofty positions for a Han Chinese was exceptional under the Manchu rulers.

Lü Liu-Liang (1629–1683): An intellectual and author who lived in the mid-1600s, toward the end of the Ming Dynasty and the beginning of the Qing Dynasty. In his youth he took an active part in anti-Manchu activities in the Lake Tai region. When those military campaigns failed, he returned to his native land and became a hermit. He was best known for his chauvinistic and ultra-nationalistic philosophy. He expounded on the idea that there is a basic difference between the Chinese and those who dwell outside of China proper; and the difference is that the later being inferior creatures. One of his poems, which appears to be innocuous, but is actually a thinly veiled anti-Manchu poem:

Though the light breeze (qing feng) is sharp, it can not blow me down.

Since when the bright moon (ming yue) does not shine on people?

Cold ice can not block the flow of long running water.

Even a dead tree can grow once more when spring comes.

The key words which revealed the anti-Manchu sentiment are contained in the first two sentence: (*Qing* feng and *ming* yue) referring to the Qing and Ming Dynasties.

Zeng Jing (1679-1735): A “Xiu cai” [a title for those scholars who had not past the civil service examination beyond the local level] from Yong-Xing County, a poor and remote region in south-eastern Yunnan province.

Zhang Xi: A student of Zeng Jing, who served as the carrier of the letter to be delivered to General Yue Zheng-Qi. In the past he had visited Lü Liu-Liang’s family and had access to the family’s vast collection of Lü’s writings. Like his teacher, he was greatly affected by the political philosophy of Lü Liu-Liang

The “Blood Droplet”? According to writers of the martial arts genre, there is nothing in the world which can evoke more terror than the name “Blood Droplet”. But what exactly is the “Blood Droplet”? Some say it is the name of an intelligence organization during Emperor Yong-Zheng’s reign. This is unlikely as Emperor Yong-Zheng’s intelligence agency already had the unusual name of “The Sticky Pole Bureau.” The sticky pole is a long bamboo pole with sweet rice applied to one tip of the pole and is used to catch cicadas and dragonflies. From this name along, one can sense the Emperor’s opinion of his political enemies. They are nothing more than tiny creatures for his amusement. Some say the name referred to the secret agents themselves who were world-class martial artists who were able to kill and dispose their victim’s body by squirting a chemical on the corpse that would leave only a drop of blood behind. Thus the moniker “Blood Droplet”. Some insisted that “Blood Droplet” is a weapon which has the power of decapitating an opponent within ten paces. Unfortunately, until this day there is little agreement on what “Blood Droplet” really was and there is no historical evidence that such a thing even existed. In all likelihood, it was a figment of imagination from martial-arts novelists.

人物簡介

[雍正皇帝 1678-1735]: 康熙皇帝的第四子, 乳名胤禛. 廟號:[世宗憲皇帝], 年號:[雍正]. 清朝入關統治中原後的第三位皇帝. 他在位約十三年[1722-1735]. 他繼成皇位是令人們爭論的, 因為幾位皇子曾有殘酷的儲君之爭, 雍正登基時他的幾個兄弟都死在獄中.

[岳鍾琪 1686-1754]:他是中國民族英雄岳飛的第二十一代孫.六百多年前岳飛在北宋時期領兵抵抗關外金人入侵.那些金人-女真族-即是滿清人的祖宗.他的文官職位是四川,陝西兩省的總督.他的武官是華西軍區司令員.在滿州人統治的時代,漢人擁有這樣的政治與軍事權力是少有的.

[呂留良 1629-1683]:他是十七世紀中葉,明末清初時期的知識分子與作家.他年輕時曾經參加過在[太湖]一帶的反清復明軍事活動.軍事行動失敗後他退隱到家鄉去.他提倡極端民族主義思想.他還推廣中國古代的[華夷之辨]與[化外之民]的論說.所謂化外之民,就是還沒有開化的低劣民族.他有一首詩,不經意的看來是一首哀情詩,但細看也可能是一首雙關意義,反清復明詩句.

清風雖細難吹我，明月何嘗不照人？寒冰不能斷流水，枯木也會再逢春！

A Most Unusual Letter

As General Yue Zhong-Qi returned to his headquarters in Xi-an from the outskirts of the city, a man was rushing toward his entourage while waving something in his hand. As the man came closer, the armed guards immediately formed a protective ring around the General's sedan chair. At closer distance the General can see that the man was holding what appeared to be an envelop. He ordered his men to fetch the envelop and bring it to him. All it took was one quick glance at the envelop to tell the general that he was in serious trouble as the letter was not addressed to him by neither of his two official titles but with the honorific title of "Heaven-sent Great General". He ordered to have the letter carrier detained and as soon as he returned to his headquarters, he opened the letter and read it in private. His fear was confirmed. A man from Yong-Xing County, Hu-Nan Province, went by the moniker of Summer Calm had urged the general to rise up with his mighty army and chase the ruling Manchus back to their homeland outside the Great Wall. According to the writer of the letter, it is his duty and destiny simply because he is a descendant of the Song Dynasty general Yue Fei, who more than 600 years ago fought the Jurchens who had invaded China. The Jurchens were the ancestors of the Manchus who over-threw the Ming Dynasty. To General Yue Zhong-Qi, this idea is nothing new, for such rumors had been circulated around before and he knows that the emperor is fully aware of this. For this reason, he must be extremely careful on how he handles this case, because every thing he owns, including his reputation and official stature, could vanish at the blink of an eye, depending on the grace or whim of the emperor.

一封超尋常的信

當岳將軍從郊區回到他的總部時,街上有一個人手裡拿著一件東西向他的隨從們拚命地揮動著.他的衛士們立刻把將軍的轎子圍起來,已防不測.當這個人走近的時候,他手裡拿著的似乎是一封信件.將軍下令部下把信封拿過來給他.只一看他就臉色大變.他知道這是大禍臨頭.這是因為信封上沒有寫他的武官或是文官的頭銜,而是用一個尊敬稱號:[天賜大將軍].他下令把帶信人羈押下來並帶回衙門去.他到了他的密室把信封打開.一看就知道他的恐懼是正確的.寫信人是湖南省,永興縣人氏,自稱外號是[夏靚].他催促岳鍾琪帶領他的大軍起義,把滿洲人趕回關外去.寫信人認為這是岳鍾琪的責任,也是他的命運,因為他是岳飛的嫡系.六百多年前宋朝名將岳飛領兵抵抗金人女真族入侵.女真族就是滿洲人的祖先.但對岳鍾琪來說,這並不是一個新鮮的觀念.正因為他是岳飛的後代,街市上常有這個傳說.他知道皇上也知道這些謠言.正是為了這一點,他要特別小心處理這一個異常的案件.他擁有的一切,他的財富,他的名譽,以及在官場的威望,轉眼就會煙消雲散.這就靠皇上的恩典或一時之興致.

Accusations Against the Emperor Needless to say, the general has decided that he must conduct the interrogation of the letter carrier personally and alone. He has also decided that he must request an official with the same rank or higher than he is to be a witness at the interrogation. Furthermore, this official is to prepare his own report and be submitted independently to the emperor.

The letter carrier, who went by the name of Zhang Xi, turned out to be a student of the letter writer, who signed the letter with the pseudonym Summer Calm, but whose real name is Zeng Jing, a poor school teacher in a remote and poor area in the south-eastern corner of Yong-Xiang County, Hu-Nan Province. He is a scholar who had never advanced behind the local level of the civil service examination. Both student and teacher had an extreme adherence to the philosophy concerning [The difference between the Chinese and the barbarians] and [People living outside civilization] as preached by Lü Liu-Liang. They especially supported movements represented by slogans such as “Rebel against the Qing Dynasty and restore the Ming Dynasty” and “Expel the Manchus and revitalize China”. In the letter he accused the emperor of ten great crimes:

- (1) Scheming against his father (the emperor Kang-Xi)
- (2) Extortion against his mother.
- (3) Murdered his older brother.
- (4) Butchered his two younger brothers
- (5) Greed for riches.
- (6) Loves to kill innocent people
- (7) A drunkard
- (8) A sex maniac.
- (9) Paranoid ally suspicious.
- (10) Killed loyal ministers and promoted the sycophants .

Based on the 9 grade civil service system, only officials with a rank of the 4th grade or higher were qualified to send the emperor secret reports. During the reign of Emperor Yong-Zheng, over 200 officials through the empire had the rank of 4th grade or higher. Under normal circumstances, these reports were generally sent in batches due to the expense involved and the time they took; however this case is so bizarre and sensitive that General Yue Zhong-Qi decided to send the report to the emperor by special carriers who traveled day and night in order to reach the capital as quickly as possible.

告皇帝的狀

不用說,岳將軍知道他必須親自一個人審問這個帶信人. 而且他得請一位官員官位比他一樣的或者更高的人來陪審. 這位陪審人必須寫他自己的報告向皇上匯報.

帶信人姓張名熙.他是寫信人的學生.寫信人叫曾靜,外號夏靚.他是一個落第秀才,當塾師為業.家居在湖南省,永興縣的一個窮鄉僻壤的村莊.他們師生兩人都有極端的民族思想.他們崇拜和擁護呂留良的[華夷之辨]和[化外之民]的學說.他們更支持[反清復明],[排滿興漢]的行動.在信上,曾靜控告雍正皇帝十大罪狀:

謀父、逼母、弑兄、屠弟、貪財、好殺、酗酒、淫色、懷疑、誅忠(好諛)

根據清朝的九級官銜制度,從一品至九品,只有四品或以上的官員才有資格給皇帝稟告秘密.在雍正皇帝統治時,全國有二百多位官員是四品以上.在通常情況下,為了費用昂貴和時間的

需要,這些秘密匯報是整批寄往皇宮去的.可是目前的案件實在是太離奇古怪,太棘手. 所以岳將軍決定派特別快騎,日夜馬不停蹄進京.

Awaken from Dilution When the emperor received the two separate reports, he took a quick glance at the supporting report, put it down and had never look at it again. The report from General Yue, along with Zeng Jing's letter, however, had totally absorbed the emperor's time and attention. As he read Zeng Jing's letter, he was more puzzled than angry. He simply could not understand why people hated him so much as he has worked so hard for the betterment of the people's livelihood. When he sought advice from his ministers in the Ministry of Law and Punishment on how to handle this case, they all invariably had the opinion that this is nothing but an undiluted case of treason and that the punishment for that is clearly written; however, the emperor had other concerns and did not view this simply as a case of treason. He needed to know if there are other conspirators and the sources which created this hate in Zeng Jing. He believes that if he had Zeng Jing executed, there will be another Zeng Jing in the future; so the best solution is to have him understand and realize that his hate for the emperor is wrong. In short, he is interested in treating the source of the problem instead of the symptom. To do that, he decided to carry out two tasks: (1) he will provide rebuttals to all the crimes Zeng Jing has accused him of committing and have the material distributed through all the provinces for the widest exposure possible for the public; (2) he would make all the official documents available to Zeng Jing, including the history of his succession to the throne, to show him that he had been mistaken all along. As for the accusation that the emperor takes pleasure in killing innocent people, the emperor showed that he personally reviewed all cases which involved capital punishment. As a case in point, he related a case involving a man who was condemned to death for killing his older brother; however, when the emperor reviewed the case, he discovered that the incident was not an unambiguous case of murder. Apparently, the two men had a dispute over family property and in a moment of anger, the older brother picked up a large porcelain jar and threw it at his younger brother. The younger man caught the jar in mid-air and tossed it back just as his brother was turning around to leave the area. Unfortunately, the large porcelain jar hit him squarely on the back of his head and killed him. To the emperor, it was clearly a case of manslaughter and not murder. Besides the ten main crimes which Zeng Jing had accused the emperor of committing, he also had some petty gripes to make as well. He pointed out that the copper coins, the main currency of the time, minted by the previous emperors were shiny with clear character markings on them, but Emperor Yong-Zheng's copper coins were dull and one can hardly see the characters on them. It turned out that there was a good reason for this. Copper smiths through the empire found that they can make a good profit by smelting copper coins and make utensils out of them. This caused a severe shortage of copper and in turned led to a drastic change on the way the government minted the copper coins. Instead of using an alloy with a high content of copper and a small amount of tin and lead to mint the coins, the amount of copper in the alloy was reduced drastically and the difference was replace by lead, a much cheaper metal. This change made the new coins unsuitable for making kitchen utensils, but also reduced their attractiveness.

After studying all the official documents provided to him by the emperor, Zeng Jing began to understand how the government operated and functioned. It was not an arbitrary or irrational process purely dependent on the whimsical desires of the emperor. Either he was afraid of the ultimate punishment for treason, or he was truly repentant, we will never know; but he agreed to write a lengthy record of repentance indicating what and how he was led astray. That lengthy

confession and self-criticism was compiled into a book entitled: [The Record of Returning to Goodness]. Later on, the emperor combined his rebuttals to the charges against him with Zeng Jing's confessions into a book with the new entitle: [The Record of Great Justice: Awakening from Delusion]. In the new book the emperor expounded on the philosophy that the Chinese and the so-called barbarians are one family. Zeng Jing also agreed to make lecture tours through the major cities of the empire confessing his past errors and praised the enlighten rules of the emperor. The case dragged on for many years, but at the end, he had not only received a pardon from the emperor, but even given a job as a scribe at the provincial capitol Chang-Sha.

醒悟？

當皇帝接到兩分匯報時,他把另一份報告稍為一瞥,把它放下,就再也不拿起來看了.他把注意力完全投入了岳鍾琪的報告上.當他閱讀曾靜的信件時,他的心情是迷惑而不是憤怒.他簡直不明白為甚麼民眾這麼憎恨他.他日夜操勞都是為了使人民得到安居樂業.當他向刑部大臣們探討這個案件時,大家都是異口同聲的說這是一個不折不扣的謀反案件.如何懲罰造反者,法律是有一定規定的.但是雍正覺得這並不是一個簡單的謀反案件.他必須知道有沒有其他的同謀者,更需要知道是甚麼事物引起這種叛逆思想.他還知道,殺曾靜容易,不過殺了他以後還有第二個曾靜出現.所以他決定要治病源,不治症狀.那就是要使曾靜領會他對皇帝的憎恨是錯誤的.對此,他執行兩個行動.(一)他除了對曾靜的每一條通告他的罪狀作出反駁之外,他還詳細講述[漢滿一家]的概念.(二)他給曾靜各種關於國家行政的文件.讓他知道政府如何運轉,這包括他繼位的歷史和過程.關於雍正濫殺無辜的控告,他展出證據,全國所有的死刑案件,他都一一過目.他舉了一個例子,關於一個被控告弑兄而判了死刑的人.原來案件是這樣的:兩人為了家產而發生爭執.一怒之下長兄拿起一個瓦缸向他的弟弟扔去.這不但沒有擊中對方,年輕的弟弟把瓦缸接在手裡,再向對方反拋回去.但當長兄轉身要離開的時候,不幸瓦缸正巧的擊中長兄的腦袋.結果是一命嗚呼.這分明是誤殺,而不是謀殺.除了控告皇帝十大罪狀之外,曾靜還有很多雞毛蒜皮的抱怨.他說前朝所制的銅錢明亮而美觀.唯有雍正的銅錢則暗無光澤.連上面的字形也看不清楚.但根據雍正的解釋,這內裡是有原因的.以前的銅錢是用大量的銅和少量的錫和鉛做成的混合金屬.原來很多銅匠把銅錢融化後再改成為工具,還能賺到錢.這些犯法的行為引起了很嚴重的銅荒.政府的解決方法是大大減少銅的成分,而代之以價格很低的金屬,那就是鉛.這個改變領到新的銅幣不適應做工具的材料,但也影響銅錢的美觀.

當他詳細地研究完了雍正給他的文件之後,曾靜開始領會國家的組織和各個機關部門的運轉.他開始明瞭政府的各項政策不是隨便的,而是有條理的.也不是完全皇帝一個人任意做的.他是真正的知錯和悔改,還是畏罪才自我批評以求自保.這一點,我們永遠也不知道.不過,他同意寫一篇悔改文章,詳細地表達他如何走入歧途.雍正把他的悔改書編纂成一本書,題目是[歸良錄].後來,雍正還把控告他的各種罪狀和他的反駁,都編入了[歸良錄].還選了新的題目:[大義覺迷錄].在這本新書裡.雍正大力提倡[華夷一家]這個理論.曾靜還同意到各個重要城市做巡迴演說.他供認他是犯了錯誤,而盛讚雍正的英明.這個案件拖了多年後,這個犯下彌天大罪的窮秀才,不但得到了皇帝的赦免,還得到了一份工作,在省城長沙當一個文員.

Disaster Extended to the Fish in the Moat In treating the Lü Liu-Liang case, the emperor took an entirely different tack. His first imperial edict was to ensure that the corpus delicti for treason remain intact in the library of the Lü family in Zhe-Jiang Province. To that end, security agents posing as book merchants were sent to visit the Lü family, and their task was to make a

complete inventory of the entire library and identify those individuals whom Lü Liu-Liang had corresponded with during his life time. When that task was finished, all the members of the Lü family was arrested along with some of Lü's former students as well. The complete content of the library was shipped to the capital for the emperor to examine personally.

Lü Liu-Liang's writings can basically be divided into five categories: books, essays, poems, epistles and commentaries on current and historical events. It did not matter which of the above category the emperor read, the sentiment of hatred against the Qing Dynasty rule is permeated through Lü's writings. It seems that Lü Liu-Liang was a strong adherent to the ancient Chinese belief that all the ethnic groups which dwelled beyond the vassal states surrounding China were uncivilized, sub-human and just a notch above the animals. This concept was generally referred to as [The difference between the Chinese and the barbarians, the creatures outside civilized regions]. Since the Qing Imperial family came from the Jurchen ethnic group in the areas outside the Great Wall, they qualified as barbarians and therefore unsuited to rule China. He made no attempts to hide his disparagement and contempt for the Qing rulers and his nostalgia for the Ming Dynasty, which was over-thrown by the Qing Dynasty in 1644 when Lü Liu-Liang was still a child. For example, in 1661 when the last person, who had legitimate claim to the Ming Dynasty throne, Zhu You-Lang, or Emperor Yong-Li, was pursued by the Ming Dynast renegade General Wu San-Gui into Burma, where he was granted political asylum by the Burmese king; however, the younger brother of the king initiated a coup and Killed the king and the entire Chinese entourage and handed the royal Ming fugitive over to General Wu San-Gui, who had summarily carried out the execution on the spot. Thus, came the end of the Ming Dynasty even though the official date is 1644 when Emperor Chong-Zheng committed suicide in Bei-Jing and Emperor Shun-Zhi ascended the throne and became the first Qing emperor who ruled over China. Lü Liu-Liang wrote a commentary on the execution of the last Ming emperor in the southwestern province of Yun-Nan with lamentations such as "The sky is murky and the earth is dark. Ghosts cried while the gods wailed...." In the commentary he referred to Zhu You-Lang by his official imperial Ming title Emperor Yong-Li, but referred to the then Qing Dynasty emperor Kang-Xi without his imperial title. That along would warrant a death sentence for the entire family, and Lü Liu-Liang was definitely well aware of this. The more the emperor read from Lü Liu-Liang's writings, the angrier he became. He issued an edict on the Lü Liu-Liang case that was diametrically opposed to the Zeng Jing case. He concluded that Zeng Jing was merely a subsidiary case while Lü Liu-Liang was the main criminal; therefore, no re-education and no mercy. Lü Liu-Liang's body was exhumed (almost half a century after his death) and his skeleton beheaded. One of Lü's former students received an identical punishment. Besides the older sons of Lü Liu-Liang, who had already died in prison, all the male members of the Lü family over the age of 16 were executed. The remaining family members were all banished as slaves to Ning-Gu-Ta, a city to the south of Ha-Er-Bin.

殃及池魚 對於呂留良案件的處理,雍正採取了完全不同的策略. 他的第一道聖旨是把在浙江省呂家所有的藏書都保留得完整, 作為犯法的證物. 他派了幾個公安特務打扮成買書商人的模樣到呂家去. 他們的責任是把呂家的藏書都一一記錄下來. 他們還辨認跟呂留良生前有書信來往的人物. 這個任務完成了以後, 呂氏全家男女老少, 連呂留良的幾個學生都被收押起來. 所有的書籍, 信件和各種刊物, 都運到京城裡給皇帝親自過目.

呂留良的著作可分為以下的五大類:(1)書籍, (2)散文, (3)詩詞, (4)書信, (5)重大事件的評論. 無論雍正閱讀那一類的寫作, 他都看到濃厚的反清復明的觀點. 看來呂留良是大力鼓吹

中國古代關於[華夏與蠻夷之分]和[漢化蠻夷]的學說。那就是說，居住在中原和進貢國以外的人類是低層次的。他們是位居於人類和野獸之間。滿洲人既然是來自關外，以及他們的祖先是女真族，他們是理所當然的[野蠻夷民]。所以沒有資格統治中國。即使明朝早在 1644 年已經滅亡。即使那個時候他還是一個十五歲的年輕人，但他並不隱藏他對滿清統治者的詆毀和對明朝的懷戀。舉個例子來說，在 1661 那年，明朝叛將吳三桂把明朝最後的皇帝，朱由榔，也即是[永曆帝]，追到緬甸。緬甸國王給他政治保護，但是國王的弟弟發起兵變，殺了國王以及朱由榔的所有隨從，再把朱由榔交給吳三桂。明朝的末代皇帝就是這樣被當地處決。根據歷史的記載，明朝是亡於 1644 年，崇禎皇帝在北京煤山上吊那年。也是順治帝登基成為清朝第一位皇帝的那一年。所以若是根據歷史事件，我們也可以說明朝是亡於一六六一年。吳三桂殺害永曆帝的事件，呂留良曾經用以下的詞句來形容：“天昏地暗，日月無光，神哭鬼泣。”他稱朱由榔為永曆帝但對雍正並不用帝皇的稱號。就憑這一點，就會帶來滅門之禍，這一點呂留良是知道的。雍正越讀越生氣。他的定論是曾靜跟呂留良這兩個案件是完全不一樣。他覺得曾靜不過是一個從犯，呂留良才是罪魁禍首。所以，呂氏全家沒有得到政治教育改造，更沒有得到皇上的寬恕。聖主一下，呂留良跟他一個已經死去的學生的屍體被挖出來斬首。呂家全家十六歲以上的男丁都遭抄斬。剩餘的都被流放到寧古塔，在哈爾濱以南，為奴隸。

Epilogue From this one case along, we see that Emperor Yong-Zheng was not a one-dimensional individual who can be characterized simply as a ruthless sovereign like many historians described him. In fact, he seemed to exhibit a split personality in how he handled the Zeng Jing and the Lü Liu-Liang cases. Here was a man who had clearly committed treason but was allowed to reform through political re-education and received a pardon in addition to a government job as well at the end. In the treatment of the Lü Liu-Liang case, however, his ruthlessness was excessive even by the standards of that era. After all, why punish innocent people for the writings of a man who had died almost half a century ago? Furthermore, when the case broke out in 1728, Yong-Zheng was already ruling over a vast, stable and powerful empire, and whatever Lü Liu-Liang had written at the time, certainly posed no threat to his authority; however, he considered the Zeng Jing case purely as subsidiary and the main evil and danger came from Lü Liu-Liang's writings and doctrines, and therefore should be expunged as forcefully as possible. On the other side of the coin, the intellectuals involved in this case also bear a certain amount of responsibility. It is certainly true that the Manchus were an alien ethnic group who had conquered China in 1644, but by the second Qing Dynasty during the reign of Emperor Kang-Xi, the imperial court had already adopted Chinese culture in totality, from Confucian and Taoism philosophies to the governmental administrative system, from the Chinese language to the civil service examination system as well. In short, the conqueror had been completely assimilated by the conquered as the Manchus had been totally fused into Chinese society and civilization. Those Chinese intellectuals, such as Lü Liu-Liang and Zeng Jing who stubbornly clung to the ancient concept that the Chinese are by nature superior to the ethnic groups outside China-proper are both counter-productive and divisive. This fact was further revealed by Emperor Yong-Zheng in [The Record of Great Justice: Awakening from Confusion], where he expounded the philosophy of “The Chinese and the so-called barbarians are of one family”.

In this respect, even the ideology adopted by the founder of the Republic of China, Dr. Sun Yat-Sen, as exhibited through his revolutionary slogan: [Expel the Tartars and re-establish China]; was outdated even for his era. In ancient times, the term Tatar referred to certain

Mongolian tribes, but in the slogan above, it is obviously referring to all nomadic tribes north of the Great Wall region, with the Manchus included; however, by the turn of the 20th Century, the Qing Dynasty has ruled China for 268 years and has expanded its territory into the greatest landmass ever recorded in Chinese history. Furthermore, the Manchus has become part of the Chinese nation. The Chinese nation I am referring to here is not the same concept which Mr. Liang Qi-Chao introduced at the turn of the 19th Century, which included only the Han Chinese. In fact, I am not even referring to the Chinese nation which re-defined later as a nation consisting of five ethnic groups: Han, Manchus, Mongolians, Hui (Muslims), and Tibetans. My idea of a Chinese nation is the complete fusion of the Han tribe with the 55 other minority groups.

The Final Outcomes and Fates of the Key Characters

Zeng Jing and Zhang Xi

This rather bizarre case had another unexpected twist at the ending. When Emperor Yong-Zheng die in 1735, Emperor Qian-Long ascended to the throne. Qian-Long has been credited by historians in general as a capable and enlighten sovereign; and yet, he overturned his father's verdict concerning the Zeng Jing case. He had both Zeng Jing and Zhang Xi summarily executed by slow-death, the official punishment for treason in that era. The reason he gave for his decision was simply that such an action was necessary to vent the angers of the officials and general public against these two renegades.

Yue Zhong-Qi

Near the end of Yong-Zheng's reign, the general waged yet another campaign to suppress an uprising in the western frontier around Ha-Mi, Xin-Jiang. He divided his army into two routes assigning his deputy to command the second army. Due to poor coordination between the two armies, his deputy suffered a disastrous defeat, including the lost of more than a dozen general-rank officers. Back in the imperial court, his political enemies seized the opportunity to undermine his influence by submitting a report to the emperor accusing him of miss-managing the battles which led to the disastrous defeat. The emperor handed the case over to the Military Affairs Commission to decide on the punishment. The investigation took two years and the returned verdict was a death penalty; however, the emperor considered the contribution the general has made in the pacification of the Western frontier and commuted his sentence to imprisonment.

Yong-Zheng die in 1735 and his son Emperor Qian-Long ascended the throne. Two years later, he released Yue Zhong-Qi from prison and he returned to his home province Si-Chuan as a commoner. In 1748 revolt broke out again in the area of Da-Jin-Chuan, along the upper reaches of Da-Du-He, in northwestern Si-Chuan Province. Emperor Qian-Long recalled Yue Zhong-Qi and gave him the rank of general and later commander-in-chief of the entire force of Si-Chuan Province. The last campaign Yue Zhong-Qi led was in 1754 in his home province against a local revolt staged by an evil cult. By then he was 68 years old and his health was failing fast as he suffered from pulmonary disease. He died on his return trip from his last victorious campaign.

尾聲 單從這一個案件來看, 雍正並不是像一般歷史學家所說的單純人物, 只是一個濫殺無辜的暴君. 在處理這兩個案件的過程中, 他好像顯現出一個精神分裂症的人物. 曾靜是一個不折不扣的謀反者, 但通過政治教育改造和表示悔悟之後, 他不但得到了赦免, 還獲得了政府部門的一份工作. 但當他處理呂留良的案件時, 即使是從那個時代的觀點來看, 雍正的手段就殘酷至極. 為甚麼為了一個人幾乎在五十年前所寫的文章, 來殺戮無辜? 而且案件發生於 1728 年時, 雍正已經鞏固了他的王位, 他成為一個國土廣闊, 國泰民安的皇君. 不管呂留良生前的著作鼓吹甚麼極端民族主義, 對他的統治是沒有威脅的. 他的見解是曾靜只不過是

一個同謀者，罪魁是呂留良。所以他的著作及思想必須徹底消滅。另一方面呢，案中的知識份子也應該擔當一份責任。滿洲人一六四四年入關滅了明朝的時候，他們是外來的民族。這是不能否認的事實。但是到了康熙帝的時候，滿清朝廷已經完全接受了漢化。從孔子和老子的哲學到政府的行政制度，從語文到科舉制度，都已經漢化。用最簡單的話來說，那就是戰勝者反而被戰敗者完全同化。某些智識分子如呂留良和曾靜之輩，死死的抱著原始的民族思想，那就是中國人比其他的民族優良，不但引起不良的後果，還導致社會分裂。以上所說的事實，都從雍正所編的書 [大義覺迷錄] 哪裡透露出來。他致力提倡 [漢滿一家] 的學說。

從這個角度來看，國父孫中山先生所提倡的革命口號 [驅除韃虜，恢復中華]，即使在他的時代看來，這種意識形態已是過時的。到了二十世紀初，滿清人已經統治了中國二百六十八年，把國土擴張到史無前列的遼闊。早已成為中華民族內的一位成員。我所說的中華民族並不是梁啟超先生所提倡的中華民族。他認為中華民族就等於漢族。我也不是指民國初期時的 [漢滿蒙回藏] 的中華民族。我所說的是漢族和其他五十五個少數民族所混合成的中華民族。

主要人物的下場與命運

曾靜與張熙

這個離奇古怪的案件還有一個曲折和意想不到的結局。雍正帝一七三五年駕崩，乾隆帝登基。這個被歷史學家稱作英明皇帝的乾隆，竟撤銷了他父親的判決，而把曾靜和張熙處以千刀萬刃的酷刑。

岳鍾琪

一七三二年，在雍正皇朝末期時他再次出征新疆哈密的地區。他分兵兩路進攻敵人的腹地。由於動作協調失當，他的副將所領的那支軍隊竟傷亡慘重。將軍級的將領就損失了十多員。他的政敵在朝廷趁機呈上奏本彈劾岳鍾琪，告他這次慘敗是因為疏防與行軍失當。雍正把這個事件交給軍機處來處理。調查了兩年後，判決居然是斬決。但雍正懷念岳鍾琪幾十年來平定西域的功勞，所以把斬決改為監禁。

一七三五年，雍正帝駕崩，他的兒子乾隆帝繼位。兩年後乾隆釋放了岳鍾琪，讓他回到了他的故鄉四川省當一個庶民。一七四八年，在四川的西北部，大渡河的上游，大金川的一帶，叛亂又起。幾次圍剿都不順利。乾隆重召岳鍾琪歸隊。先封他為總兵（等於現在的將軍級），後再峻昇為四川提督（等於現在的軍區司令員）。岳鍾琪最後的一場戰役是一七五四年，發生在他本省的邪教叛亂。那時候，他已經是一個患上肺病的高齡老人。他帶病出征。把邪教剿滅以後，他在回程中一病不起。享壽六十八歲。

In reading such as bizarre historical case involving the collision between an individual with absolute power and some intellectuals who clung to ultra-chauvinistic doctrines, one witnesses the fearsome collateral damages to the innocent people around them. This brings up topics concerning international current events regarding the collision course between the Islamic and Western cultures. While western countries put freedom of speech and the press as absolute, i.e. one can say and write anything; but this should be tempered with a warning to those who has control of the mass media to show some sense of responsibility and discretion. As in the Charlie Hebdo case which occurred in January 2015 in Paris, a few comic strips ridiculing the Muslims led to the lost of many lives and properties and even threw the entire country into turmoil. Is this worth it? In reaction to the ridiculous follies of man, I can only heave a deep sigh and recall a famous poem by the Song Dynasty poet Su Dong-Bo:

Every one hopes to bring up their children to be bright,

*But I have been misled by my intelligence throughout my life.
I only wish my son to be born dull and awkward,
who lived throughout his life without disasters and sickness*

閱讀了這個離奇的歷史案件後,我們領略到獨裁者與超民族主義知識份子的衝突,竟然給無辜者引來天大的災難。這也令我們注意到最近在國際上發生的回教與西方文化衝突的新聞。西方人士對言論自由的觀念是無極限的。那就是說:甚麼都可以說,甚麼都可以寫。但我們應該提醒控制大眾傳播媒介的人們或團體,他們也應該顯示出一些責任感和慎重的態度。就拿 2015 年正月在巴黎發生的查理周刊案來說吧。為了幾張諷刺回教的漫畫,而引來殺身之禍,甚至把全國陷于一片混亂。這值得嗎?目睹到人類極致愚蠢的行為,我只能嘆息和想起蘇東波的名言:

人皆養子望聰明,我被聰明誤一生,但願生兒愚與魯,無災無病過終年。

Ref.1 Jonathan D. Spence, "Treason by the Book," Penguin Putnam Inc., New York, New York 10014, U.S.A.

Song of the Pipa

琵琶行

By Bai Juyi in Tang Dynasty

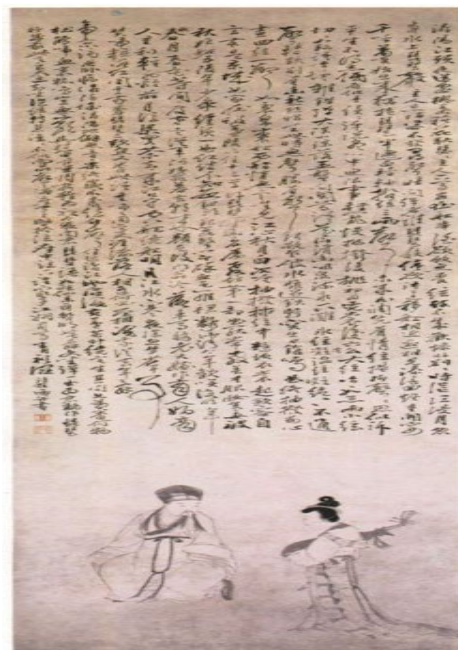
唐朝白居易作

Translated by Dr. E. C. Chang

張暢繁博士翻譯成英文



Bai Juyi 白居易



Song of the Pipa 琵琶行

琵琶行

潯陽江頭夜送客，楓葉荻花秋瑟瑟。主人下馬客在船，舉酒欲飲無管弦。
醉不成歡慘將別，別時茫茫江浸月。忽聞水上琵琶聲，主人忘歸客不發。
尋聲暗問彈者誰，琵琶聲停欲語遲。移船相近邀相見，添酒回燈重開宴。
千呼萬喚始出來，猶抱琵琶半遮面。轉軸撥弦三兩聲，未成曲調先有情。
弦弦掩抑聲聲思，似訴平生不得志。低眉信手續續彈，說盡心中無限事。
輕攏慢撚抹復挑，初為霓裳後綠腰。大弦嘈嘈如急雨，小弦切切如私語。

嘈嘈切切錯雜彈，大珠小珠落玉盤。間關鶯語花底滑，幽咽泉流水下灘。
水泉冷澀弦凝絕，凝結不通聲暫歇。別有幽愁暗恨生，此時無聲勝有聲。
銀瓶乍破水漿迸，鐵騎突出刀槍鳴。曲終收撥當心畫，四弦一聲如裂帛。
東船西舫悄無言，唯見江心秋月白。沈吟放撥插弦中，整頓衣裳起斂容。
自言本是京城女，家在蝦蟆陵下住。十三學得琵琶成，名屬教坊第一部。
曲罷曾教善才伏，妝成每被秋娘妒。五陵年少爭纏頭，一曲紅綃不知數。
鈿頭雲篋擊節碎，血色羅裙翻酒污。今年歡笑復明年，秋月春風等閒度。
弟走從軍阿嬈死，暮去朝來顏色故。門前冷落車馬稀，老大嫁作商人婦。
商人重利輕離別，前月浮梁買茶去。去來江口守空船，遶船月明江水寒。
夜深忽夢少年事，夢啼妝淚紅闌干。我聞琵琶已歎息，又聞此語重唧唧。
同是天涯淪落人，相逢何必曾相識，我從去年辭帝京，謫居臥病潯陽城。
潯陽地僻無音樂，終歲不聞絲竹聲。住近湓江地低溼，黃蘆苦竹繞宅生。
其間旦暮聞何物，杜鵑啼血猿哀鳴。春江花朝秋月夜，往往取酒還獨傾。
豈無山歌與村笛，嘔啞嘲哳難為聽。今夜聞君琵琶語，如聽仙樂耳暫明。
莫辭更坐彈一曲，為君翻作琵琶行。感我此言良久立，卻坐促弦弦轉急。
淒淒不似向前聲，滿座重聞皆掩泣。座中泣下誰最多？江州司馬青衫溼。

潯陽江頭夜送客，楓葉荻花秋瑟瑟。

I saw a friend off by the Xunyang River at nightfall.
Maple leaves and flowering rushes rustled in the fall.

主人下馬客在船，舉酒欲飲無管弦。

Dismounting from my horse, I saw my friend already in the boat.
Without piping and fiddling, we were not in the mood for a toast.

醉不成歡慘將別，別時茫茫江浸月。

How could I drink with joy as he would depart very soon?
All I could see now in the river was the reflection of the moon.

忽聞水上琵琶聲，主人忘歸客不發。

Suddenly, we heard the sound of pipa from somewhere in the river.
I forgot to go home and my guest too decided to depart a bit later.

尋聲暗問彈者誰，琵琶聲停欲語遲。

We followed where the sound led and asked who was the player?
The music stopped and she seemed somewhat hesitant to answer.

移船相近邀相見，添酒回燈重開宴。

Maneuvering our boat a little closer, we invited her to come over.

We lighted up lamps, added more wine, and resumed our dinner.

千呼萬喚始出來，猶抱琵琶半遮面。

Upon our repeated persuasions, she finally agreed to come out and play.
Holding the pipa in her arms, she came out and used it to hide half of her face.

轉軸撥弦三兩聲，未成曲調先有情：

She first tuned up and plucked the strings two or three times.
Before she started, she already revealed what was on her mind.

弦弦掩抑聲聲思，似訴平生不得志。

Every note that came out reflected her sad but genuine emotions.
It appeared that she was conveying her lifelong disappointments.

低眉信手續續彈，說盡心中無限事，

Lowering her head, she continued to skillfully pluck the strings.
She “talked about” what was in her heart through her feelings.

輕攏慢撚抹復挑，初為霓裳後綠腰。

She made use such finger techniques as combing, twisting, wiping, and plucking.
After the “Rainbow Skirts,” she played the “Green Waist,” a tune for dancing.

大弦嘈嘈如急雨，小弦切切如私語，

The sound of the thick strings reminded me of the pattering rain.
The sound of the thin strings was just like two lovers whispering.

嘈嘈切切錯雜彈，大珠小珠落玉盤。

She alternated the loud and soft notes melodiously as she played.
It felt as though pearls of various sizes glided down to a jade plate.

間關鶯語花底滑，幽咽泉流水下灘；

It was like an oriole warbling and gliding down under a flowery branch;
It also sounded like a sobbing stream flowing down to the sandy beach.

水泉冷澀弦凝絕，凝結不通聲暫歇。

The stream suddenly turned cold and the strings could move no more.
Flowing water became frozen and the sound temporarily came to a halt.

別有幽愁暗恨生，此時無聲勝有聲。

Could it be that some hidden sorrows found a way to come around?
At a time like this, wasn't silence more fitting than any given sound?

銀瓶乍破水漿迸，鐵騎突出刀槍鳴。
Suddenly, it sounded like water rushing out from a broken silver bottle.
Or, the armored riders clanking their swords and spears in a battle.

曲終收撥當心畫，四弦一聲如裂帛。
To conclude her melody, she brushed, in one motion, across the strings.
Striking the four strings simultaneously reminded one of silk-rending.

東船西舫悄無言，唯見江心秋月白。
Nobody onboard said a word from nearby boats, left to right.
Over the river, the autumn moon beamed widely in color white.

沈吟放撥插弦中，整頓衣裳起斂容。
She silently inserted the plectrum between the strings.
Smoothing out her dress, she rose gracefully before talking.

自言本是京城女，家在蝦蟆陵下住，
She said that she was a girl from Capital Chang'an.
Her family used to reside at the foot of Xiyama Mount.

十三學得琵琶成，名屬教坊第一部。
She had mastered the techniques of pipa at thirteen.
In her institute, she was among the very best in ranking.

曲罷曾教善才伏，妝成每被秋娘妒。
Her performance was applauded by the known masters.
Her appearance after make-up was the envy of other players.

五陵年少爭纏頭，一曲紅綃不知數；
Wealthy young men in Wuling vied with gifts for her attention.
Rolls of scarlet silk received each time were too numerous to mention.

鈿頭雲篦擊節碎，血色羅裙翻酒污。
Decorated pins and combs fell and damaged while beating time.
Red silken skirts were stained all over by the spilt-out wine.

今年歡笑復明年，秋月春風等閒度。
Year after year, life was filled with nothing but joy and laughter.
Autumn moon and spring breeze came and passed one after the other.

弟走從軍阿姨死，暮去朝來顏色故。
Her younger brother joined the army, and her aunt passed away.
Her beauty faded as each morning and dusk turned into another day.

門前冷落車馬稀，老大嫁作商人婦。
Fewer and fewer carriages and horses showed up now at her door.
At her age, marrying to a merchant seemed to be her only recourse.

商人重利輕離別，前月浮梁買茶去。
The profit-minded merchant was often on the road.
He went to Fuliang to purchase tea two months ago.

去來江口守空船，遶船月明江水寒。
She came to the river mouth and waited for him on an
empty boat.
Accompanying her were the bright moon and river water
in the cold.

夜深忽夢少年事，夢啼妝淚紅闌干。
Deep in the night, she dreamt of her youthful years.
She cried in her dream and stained her roughed cheeks with tears

我聞琵琶已歎息，又聞此語重唧唧。
Listening to her pipa music, I couldn't help but sigh,
I felt even sadder after hearing the story of her life.

同是天涯淪落人，相逢何必曾相識。
In a strange land, we both are downtrodden and
ill-fated persons.
Having met, it no longer matters if we are stranger or
old acquaintance.

我從去年辭帝京，謫居臥病潯陽城。
Last year, I was banished from the imperial capital.
I am here in Xunyang as a demoted and sick official.

潯陽地僻無音樂，終歲不聞絲竹聲。
Xunyang is too remote a place to have music pleasing my ears.
I have not heard the sound of strings and pipes in a whole year.

住近湓江地低溼，黃蘆苦竹繞宅生；

Residing by the River Pen, I must put up with the low and damp ground.
Moreover, my house is beset with yellow reeds and bitter bamboos all around.

其間旦暮聞何物？杜鵑啼血猿哀鳴。
From morning to dusk I don't often hear anything
Except the cuckoos' crying and gibbons' moaning.

春江花朝秋月夜，往往取酒還獨傾。
In the morning of spring blossoms or under autumn moonlight,
I often bring with me my wine and drink alone by the riverside.

豈無山歌與村笛？嘔啞嘲哳難為聽。
They do have mountaineers' songs and village pipes here.
But they are too noisy and disharmonious to please my ear.

今夜聞君琵琶語，如聽仙樂耳暫明。
Listening to pipa melodies you played for us tonight,
I felt that I was enlightened by fairy music from the sky.

莫辭更坐彈一曲，為君翻作琵琶行。
So please don't refuse to play one more melody for me.
I will compose a Song of the Pipa Player for you to see.

感我此言良久立，卻坐促弦弦轉急。
Touched by my words, she rose and stood there for a long while.
Then sat down and played by quickening the tempo in no time.

淒淒不似向前聲，滿座重聞皆掩泣。
Unlike the other tunes she played, this was so sad to our ears.
With no exception, all those in the seat were moved in tears.

座中泣下誰最多？江州司馬青衫溼。
Of all the listeners, do you know who shed the most tears?
The Assistant Prefect of Jiujiang, whose blue robe was wet.

Feng Zong-Pu. *The Everlasting Rock: A Novel.* 馮宗璞小說《三生石》

(Translated from the Chinese by Aimee Lykes.
Place of Publication: Lynne Rienner,
1998, 181 pages)

(由 Aimee Lykes 翻譯成英文
出版社：Lynne Rienner,
1998 年出版, 共 181 頁)

Reviewed by Constance Fletcher Smith
Department of Linguistics and Communication
University of Mary Washington
(Translated into Chinese by Li Li)

Constance Fletcher Smith 評論
英語與傳播學系
瑪莉華盛頓大學
(李麗翻譯成中文)

The Everlasting Rock: A Novel by Feng Zong-Pu is an excellent book to teach to American college students in a literature class, particularly a class devoted to women in literature. Feng Zong-Pu expresses the hardships of women writing around the world as they must produce their work in an often unreceptive and even hostile political environment. In this case, the background is the period of the Cultural Revolution, presenting almost insurmountable difficulties for the characters. The way in which this novel reaffirms the strength not only of women but also of the unquenchable human spirit resonates with students who are wrestling with values in their own lives and eager to learn about other countries of the world, especially about women in them. Study of the novel introduces students to the exquisite writer Feng Zong-Pu and encourages them to read closely this fine work. Last semester, I used it with success in two sections of ENGL 243 Women in Literature at Mary Washington College in Fredericksburg, Virginia. In spite of some few difficulties, the novel's strengths are so powerful that the students found their reading a profoundly rewarding experience.

馮宗璞的小說《三生石》是一本適合美國大學文學教學的優秀教材，尤其適合女性主義文學研究的課程。作者在小說中表達出全世界女性寫作的不易，因為她們必須常常要在一種難以接受甚至是敵對的政治環境中完成自己的作品。在這部作品中，她以中國文化大革命為背景，呈現出對於小說中角色幾乎無法克服的困境。小說不僅再三肯定了女性的人格力量而且肯定了全人類不可磨滅的堅強人格，這引起了學生們的廣泛共鳴——他們在生活中努力去實現自己的人生價值並且渴望去瞭解世界上的其它國家，特別是對國外女性的瞭解。學習這篇小說可以通過給學生介紹這位高雅的作者，而且鼓勵他們去精讀這篇小說。上個學期，我在瑪麗華盛頓大學教授英文專業“女性文學”這門課時讓學生學習了這篇小說，效果很好。儘管遇到了些困難，但是小說的力量太強大，學生們都覺得受益匪淺。

The Cultural Revolution took place in the period of roughly 1966-1971 under Chairman Mao Zedong. The students were given some background of this period, especially its educational and political ramifications, in various ways. They read about the People's Republic of China as explained on the University of Maryland's Asian History Website. Brief presentations introduced them to other literary works dealing with the historical events of the time, such as

Colors of the Mountain by Da Chen and *Lili: A Novel of Tiananmen* by Annie Wang. They also watched Zhang Yimou's great Chinese epic film *To Live*. In addition, for more introduction to modern China, though not specifically the period of the Cultural Revolution, they read another modern novel, *Waiting* by Ha Jin. *The Everlasting Rock* itself gives them a full and vivid portrayal of this troubled period, allowing them to experience emotionally the extent of its hardships, especially for women intellectuals.

文化大革命發生在毛澤東時代，1966 至 1971 年期間。我讓學生們從不同的方面先瞭解了這個時代的背景，特別是教育和政治方面。他們從馬里蘭大學的亞洲歷史網站上瞭解到了中國。還有我做了簡單的介紹使學生們也參考了這個時期的其它文學作品，如陳達的《山的顏色》以及王蕤的《莉莉：關於天安門的故事》。他們還觀看了張藝謀的史詩電影《活著》。此外，為了更多地瞭解現代中國，儘管不是發生在文化大革命時期，學生們還是閱讀了作家哈金的《等待》。《三生石》這篇小說對文化大革命這個混亂時期進行了全面而且生動地描述，其中體現的苦難特別是女性知識份子面臨的困境，讓學生們感同身受。

The particular edition the class used opens with a very good introduction by Chen Su Yen, research fellow of the Chinese Literature Institute, Chinese Academy of Social Sciences. The introduction presents Zong-Pu as a writer who has been well respected in China ever since she published her first short story, "Red Beans," in the 1950s. She has now produced, in addition to her major novels such as *Ye Hulu Yin* (Pull on the Wild Bottlegourd), essays, translations, children's stories, poems, songs, and commentaries. Chen Su Yen describes Zong-Pu's prose as refined, elegant, restrained, succinct, graceful, resourceful, poetic, and powerful.

我的學生讀的這篇小說是一個特別的版本，開篇是由中國社會科學院中國文學研究所研究員陳素燕做的一個很好的介紹。介紹中說自宗璞的第一篇 50 年代的小說《紅豆》起，她在中國一直是一位受人尊敬的作家。除了她的代表作《野葫蘆引》，宗璞還剛發表了散文、翻譯、童話、詩歌、歌曲以及回憶錄。陳素燕評價說宗璞的作品是精煉的、高雅的、理性地、簡潔的、得體的、豐富的、有詩意的並且是生動有活力的。

The students in the class could readily appreciate the superb craftsmanship of the novel. The everlasting rock of the title binds the book into a tightly constructed and successful literary whole. On a literal level is an actual rock that stands inside the little compound, Spoon Court, where the main character, Mei Puti, has been forced to share a tiny living space with her father and her next door neighbor and colleague, Tao Huiyun from "Y University." They have been driven from the university and forced to endure unspeakable treatment, which is sometimes graphically but never tastelessly presented. Mei's father does not survive, but Huiyun becomes her best friend, nearly religious in her selfless devotion.

我班上的學生都能很快地欣賞到這篇小說的極好的寫作技巧。小說的標題“三生石”將這部小說緊扣成結構緊密的、成功的文學整體。從文字內容上來看，確實有一塊石頭矗立在主人公梅菩提生活的地方。這是一快很小的地方，梅菩提迫不得已才跟她的爸爸和她

的鄰居及同事陶慧韻一起住。他們被大學趕出來而且被強制進行了無以言說的折磨，這種折磨有時可以用圖畫出來，但不可能用白話說出來。梅菩提的父親沒有活下來，但陶慧韻成了她最好的朋友，對梅菩提幾乎是無私的奉獻。

At the beginning of the novel, Mei Puti discovers that she has breast cancer, (the first chapter is titled “Diagnosis,”) and cancer serves as another prominent and unifying symbol, providing a metaphor throughout the novel for China’s cancer of the Cultural Revolution itself. Characters who support the Cultural Revolution tend to be fatally infected as opposed to those who fight against the disease and long to be healthy.

在小說的開始，梅菩提發現她得了乳腺癌（第一章節標題是診斷）。這裡的癌症有另一層和小說主題一致的突出的象徵意義。在整篇小說中，它被暗喻成整個中國的癌症—文化大革命。那些支持文化大革命的角色就像是患上了絕症，他們敵對著那些為了健康跟癌症作鬥爭的角色。

Another literal rock is the white stone that a poor peasant boy finds and presents to the teenaged Puti when she is on a field trip. It may seem unlikely that these two should meet again years later after following very different paths, but Zong-Pu presents the events so seamlessly that the coincidence does not trouble student readers. In fact, it emphasizes some of the positive aspects of the Cultural Revolution. The boy trains at government expense to become a doctor, which would have been impossible for him.

另一塊石頭是當還是少年的梅菩提在出遊的時候，一個農村男孩發現的並且給梅菩提看的一塊白色石頭。或許在我們看來兩個成長路徑完全不同的小孩不可能在多少年以後還會再次相遇，但作者宗璞天衣無縫地製造了一種巧合，而這種巧合並沒有讓學生們感到迷惑。事實上，作者也在強調文化大革命中某些積極的方面，比如那位男孩經過政府的培訓最後成為了一名醫生，這對他來說是不可能發生的事情。

On another level, *The Everlasting Rock* is also the title of a fictional work that Mei Puti the character has written. It conveys a tale of love and friendship so strong as to withstand all forces ranged against it. The novel was highly acclaimed before it was denounced as old fashioned, decadent, and corrupt, and before Mei Puti herself was denounced for writing it. Feng Zong-Pu herself was similarly denounced and wrote nothing during the period of the Cultural Revolution, returning to writing and publishing only in 1978, since when she has been prolific.

另外一方面，三生石也是主人公梅菩提寫的一部小說的標題。那篇小說描述的是一個堅不可摧的愛情和友誼故事。在被譴責為過時的、墮落的、腐朽的小說以及在梅菩提因寫這部小說收到譴責前，那部小說一直得到了好評。作者馮宗璞她自己也類似地受到了譴責，在文化大革命期間，她沒有寫任何作品，直到 1978 年她才開始寫作和發表，從此以後她的作品就非常多了。

At the same time that Puti's book has caused her suffering, however, it has served her in several ways. She has been proud of her creation, and her spirit receives solace from its former success. Moreover, one afternoon, a young doctor, Fang Zhi, finds a copy of the book abandoned in the woods, reads it, and is deeply moved. He is the doctor who treats Mei Puti and, in spite of the prevailing political climate, he has a deep respect for her and her work which flourishes in this barren and unlikely time. Their relationship of true attachment and eventual marriage is, in yet another guise, the everlasting rock of the title.

與此同時，梅菩提的小說給她造成了極大的痛苦，不過體現在不同的方面。她一直為自己的作品而感到自豪，而且之前的成功給她的心靈帶來了慰藉。另一方面，一天下午一位年輕的醫生 Fang Zhi 從樹林中找到一本被丟棄的書，讀了之後被深深打動了。他就是那位治療梅菩提的醫生，儘管政治風氣不太好，他對梅菩提以及她的作品非常尊敬。他覺得梅菩提的作品在這個不可能發生的時代一直滋潤著這段荒蕪的年代。他們緊緊相依的命運以及到最後的婚姻，是另一個隱喻，也就是小說標題中的三生石。

The rock of relationship also describes the abiding, self sacrificing friendship of the two women, Mei Puti and Tao Huiyun. They support each other through such atrocities as Mei's almost botched operation and Huiyun's near madness as she loses her son to the Revolution. One beautiful passage of Zong-Pu's method describes Mei Puti's realization of the reason her friend has worn a cap and scarf while visiting her in the hospital. She sits down on her bed as if struck by a blow, and mourns Tao Huiyun's hair scattered on the ground. The understatement is piercingly effective.

這塊體現人物關係的石頭也描述了兩個女人梅菩提、陶慧韻間的持久的自我犧牲的情誼。她們彼此互相支持，共度難關—梅菩提幾乎喪失了行動能力以及陶慧韻因這場革命喪失了兒子幾乎要瘋掉。作者用用了很美的一段描寫了梅菩提意識到她朋友裹著帽子和圍巾來醫院看她。她像被人打了的樣子坐到床上，看到陶慧韻的頭髮散落在地上感到憂傷。這段輕描淡寫起到的效果非常好。

The style of the prose is often marked by a quiet sadness which is neither despairing nor altogether optimistic in spite of the overall positive message. Mei Puti and Fang Zhi find happiness and are married, but even as they are celebrating, their friend Tao Huiyun is dragged off by Red Guards. The damage may well be lasting, but the future will overcome these dark times as the values of love, caring, self-sacrifice, and mutual responsibility are strongly reaffirmed. Students are quick to respond positively to the reaffirmation of hope and fundamental dignity.

這篇作品的風格通常被認定為安靜悲傷，但既不是絕望，也不是整體的樂觀。梅菩提和方智找到了幸福並進入了婚姻的殿堂，但是當他們在慶祝的時候，陶慧韻被紅衛兵拖走。這場革命帶來的破壞可能還在繼續，但是未來終將戰勝黑暗，因為這些正義的力量—愛情，

關懷，無私奉獻，互助是被作者再三肯定的。學生們很快就認同了作品中對未來希望和基本尊嚴肯定。

One difficulty the students did encounter was with the unfamiliar (to them) Chinese names. Fortunately, this edition features a list at the beginning of all the characters' names and roles, which proves a useful quick reference to help students navigate the text. However, the proper names of the characters as transliterated into English have only a vague resemblance to their correct Chinese pronunciation as I discovered when I consulted a native speaker. (For his help, many thanks to Moses Mi.)

學生遇到的其中一個難題是他們不熟悉中文名字。幸運的是，這個小說版本在一開始就羅列了所有人物的名字以及每個人物充當的角色。這對學生閱讀文章提供了快速定位幫助很大。不過當我諮詢過母語是漢語的人之後（在此謝謝 Moses Mi.），我發現中文名字翻譯成英文後的發音和中文名字的本身發音有一定的差距。

American students exposed to this novel learn some of the uglier aspects of modern Chinese history during the Cultural Revolution, but they do not learn about it in oversimplified ways. They see the optimism characterizing the beginning of the Cultural Revolution. They meet a rich cast of characters, from the manipulative Zhang Yongjiang to the other patients, doctors and nurses at the hospital. One woman, an ardent revolutionary, is also sick with cancer. She has a daughter who, while respectful and helpful, firmly repudiates her mother's distorted political fervor. There seems to be some hope for the next generation. A plot by officials to move a body and place blame on an innocent party is foiled; the good seems to triumph briefly. But when Fang Zhi throws himself out a window to get to Puti and escape his confinement by Red Guards, he injures himself badly. Students appreciate that nothing is easy in this novel, or without high cost. The tone of sadness is pervasive.

當學生們閱讀和學習《三生石》這篇來自有才華的女作家的小說時，他們感覺自己被帶入了小說的世界 — 恐怖但又有帶點微妙輕微的愉悅，並充滿了愛情和友誼。正因作者馮宗璞對女性問題的敏銳理解以及高超的文藝技巧，學生們可以收穫到全面、豐富的閱讀體驗。

A Verse on 2015 Chinese Luna New Year Eve 乙未大年夜有感

Chin Chang (14 years old)

親昌 (14 歲作)



月落寒霜東映水，梅如清雪西倚窗；
此等美景雖逢覓，惜無玉露共酌嘗。

**Moonlight shades into cold frost reflecting from water in the east.
White plum blossom looks like snow flake lying in window in the west.
This beautiful natural scene is hardly sought.
However there is no dew to appreciate in company.**

The Patriarchs of Buddhism (5)

佛祖道影 (5)

Collected by Master Hsu Yun

虛雲老和尚編集

Instructed by Master Hsuan Hua

宣化和尚講述

Eighth Patriarch Arya Buddhānandī

八祖：佛陀難提尊者



尊者，迦摩羅國人也。頂有肉髻，辯才無礙。初見七祖論義，祖曰：「仁者！論即不義，義即不論。若擬論義，終非義論。」尊者知祖義勝，心即欽服，曰：「吾願求道，露甘露味。」祖遂與剃度授具，付以大法，偈曰：「心同虛空界，示等虛空法；證得虛空時，無是無非法。」尊者得法已，領眾行化至提伽國，轉付法於伏馱密多，即現神變，卻復本座，端然示寂。爾時眾建寶塔，葬其全身。

Interpretation: Revering Arya was with the nationality Luo. His speeches were great and eloquent. Initially, he met with his teacher, the 7th Patriarch, to discuss righteousness. His teacher said, "Savant! Speech and discuss mean no righteousness, righteousness has no need to talk. If one plans to discuss righteousness, then one ends non-righteousness theory." Revering knew his teacher's righteousness victory, he admired his teacher's theory. He said: "I am willing to search for dharma, and learn the Great Way." Then his teacher shaved his hair, and Arya took refuge and Bottisava's precepts from him, and transmitted him the Great Way. He said: "My mind is like emptiness, which looks like emptiness dharma. If one demonstrates emptiness, it means no dharma." When Revering Arya obtained the dharma, he taught the Great Way to a multitude of people, and transmitted the dharma to the next patriarch. Then he showed a Buddhist appearance and turned into nirvana. His disciples built a Buddhist tower to restore his body and arshes.

白話解:尊者，迦摩羅國人也：第八祖，名字叫佛陀難提，是印度迦摩羅國的人。頂有肉髻，辯才無礙：這他一生來，頂上就有個肉髻。你看他這個像，頂上有個肉髻，有個肉糾糾。他無論和誰講話，誰都講不過他，他一定勝利。初見七祖，論義：這他一開始去見七祖婆須密尊者，就到那兒和七祖論義。論義，就是大家談論義理的意思。這是沒有「言」字邊的「義」，不是「議論」。祖曰：仁者，論即不義，義即不論，若擬論義，終非義論。這七祖就對他說了：仁者！你一論，就不是真義了。「義即不論」，你若是真有義的時候，是不可以論的。「若擬論義」：你若是想一想，想來研究這個真正的道理的話。「終非義論」：你就沒有真理了。這個「義」，是真正的真理；前面的「擬論義」，就是你若來說真理的話。尊者知祖義勝，心即欽服：這位佛陀難提尊者，知道七祖的道理比他高了！因為那個真正的道理，你說不出來的，所以心裏很佩服七祖的。曰：吾願求道，露甘露味。說：「我願意現在向祖師求道，我想要得到這個甘露法味。」祖遂與剃度，授具，付以大法：七祖當時就給他剃度，授具足戒，傳給他心印的大法。偈曰：又給他說

一首偈頌：心同虛空界，示等虛空法：這心和虛空是一樣的，我現在指示你這個虛空的法。證得虛空時，無是無非法：這你證得虛空這個境界的時候，「無是無非法」，這才是沒有什麼義可議論的了。

尊者得法已，領眾行化，至提伽國，轉付法與伏馱密多：這尊者得法之後，就領眾遊方行化，來到了提伽國，又將此心印法門傳給第九祖伏馱密多尊者。**即現神變，卻復本座，端然示寂：**然後就即刻現出神通變化，躡身虛空，現十八變後，又回到自己的座位上，就在那兒跏趺而坐，往生了。爾時眾建寶塔，葬其全身：當時大家給他建個寶塔，把他的全身葬在那兒。

贊曰

論即非義，一語便了：「你若討論討論，或者研究研究，那就沒有真理了。」七祖就這麼說一句話，八祖就開悟了。

廓徹靈源，撒卻珍寶：已經明白本來的面目，已經開悟了。「撒卻珍寶」，把珍寶都不要了。

甘露門開，三更日杲：甘露法門都開了。「三更日杲」，三更就是半夜。雖在晚間，但好像太陽出來了。這是一個譬喻，是說晚間你放光，有一種光明的境界，好像天明了。

今之古之，清光皎皎：現在是這樣子，古來也是這樣子，這種清淨光明，非常的明亮。

**Elder Master Venerable Hsu Nobel Yun's Self-
Description of His time and Instructions (6)**

**上虛下雲老和尚自述
年譜暨開示 (6)**

Edited by Tzen Shai Lu

岑學呂編輯

(Translated into English by an editor)

(由編者翻譯成英文)



原作

虛雲和尚作

曹溪重見放光明。今古艱難兩德清。施設門庭略不異。始知乘願在來生。
由來時節合因緣。夢裏南華已二十。今日皈依三寶竟。曹溪一派在當前。

Original Work

by Master Hus Yun

Cao Shi has been rebuilt with brightness; it is a difficult task at present and past. Arch gates look slightly different; realizing great wishes come true in next life.

It is a fantastic occasion; twenty years have passed in my dream at the Nanhua Monastery. I took triple jewelries with Buddhism; Cao Shi is right in front of me.

Master Hsu Yun's Self- Description of his time

虛雲老和尚自述年譜

◎ 光緒十一年乙酉四十六歲

◎ In the 46th year of Emperor Guangxu

春。離香山。西出大慶關。入陝境。經耀州三原。至咸陽。觀召伯甘棠樹。至長安。城垣雄偉。古跡甚多。城外東北慈恩寺內大雁塔。浮屠七級。有唐代以下題名碑。大秦景教碑。府學宮前為碑林。有七百餘種。城東為灊橋。環有七十二孔。橋亭折柳。有陽關三疊處。至華嚴寺禮杜順和尚塔。清涼國師塔。至牛頭寺興國寺禮玄奘法師塔。到終南山東五臺。響鼓坡。寶藏寺。白水浪。此處有兩聖僧隱此。到嘉五臺銀洞子五祖窠。至南五臺。晤覺朗。冶開。法忍。體安。法性。諸上人。在此結茅庵。留予同住。法忍住老虎窩。冶開居捨龍椿。法性住湘子洞。予與覺朗體安同住大茅蓬。三月初一日早殿後。忽見群星亂飛。天帚星現。久之始沒。不知何兆也。

〔是年大事〕 去年中法戰事起。本年和約割安南屬法。

In the spring, I left from Xiangsan, and went to the west to Daqing. I then entered into the Shaanxi border through Yaozhou Mihara., Xianyang, Zhao Bo, and to Xi'an. There were many magnificent ancient monuments, city wall, and beautiful scenes. In the east of the city, there was a bar bridge with 72 ring-holes decorated by willow trees, and Yangguansan gates. I then arrived at Huayansi monastery and saluted Dusun monk tower and national division cool tower, Ngau Tau Kokokuji monastery, Xuanzang

tower, and went to five stations in Zhongnan Shandong. There were ring drum slopes, temple treasures, and white water waves. There were two holy men hidden here. One was the place of the 5th patriarch of Chinese Buddhism, so called five Yindongzi. To the south five stations, the 5th Patriarch Hongzen built a simple house here. I met Masters Guanlang, Yekai, Faren, Tian, Fashing, etc, who lived here. Faren stayed in a tiger habitat, Yekai lived in a den, Fashing lived in a carve, and I stayed with Guanlang. On the first of March, I observed many stars flying in the sky, but I did not know the reason.

[Major events this year] Chinese had a war with French last year, and signed a treaty to cede Annam as a colony of France this year.

◎ 光緒十二年丙戌四十七歲

◎ In the 47th year of Emperor Guangxu

【是年大事】英併緬甸。設台灣省。

[Major events this year] Great Britain invaded Burma. Taiwan Province was established.

◎ 光緒十三年丁亥四十八歲

◎ In the 48th year of Emperor Guangxu

以上兩年餘。在南五台茅蓬。與諸師同參究。甚有饒益。二月下山至翠微山。禮皇裕寺。青華山。後安山淨業寺。禮宣祖塔。至草堂寺。禮鳩摩羅什法界道場。遊太白山。高一百八里。六月不溶雪。至二板寺大板寺。上大龍池頂。水分四流。經子午鎮。至漢中府(及南鄭)漢高主拜將台。包城諸葛廟。張飛萬年燈諸名勝。經龍洞背。天雄關。小峨嵋。劍門關。鉢孟寺。白馬關。龐統墳。以達四川梓潼縣文昌廟。途中經七曲山。九曲水。劍門關。削壁中截。兩崖相嵌如劍。誠所謂一夫當關。萬夫莫開之概。上有姜維城。及伯約駐兵處。棧道難行。如上青天。古人不虛語也。至廣漢之南新都縣。在寶光寺過年。本年入川。踽踽獨行。三衣一鉢。都無繫累。徜徉山水。境亦澄心。

In the past two years, I lived in the Wutai mountain, studied Buddhism with masters, and benefited a lot. In February, I went to the Tseiwei mountain, and worshiped at the Lihuang temple and Qinghua mountain. Then I stayed at the Anshan temple, worshiped at Hsuanju tower, and went to the grass chamber temple. I bowed and worshiped Giomoloshi dharma field, and visited the Taibo mountain which has the height 108000 feet. In June, the snow was still not melted out. I went to Daiban temple and Eiban temple and climbed up into Dailong pong, the water was divided into four branches through Jiwu town. I bowed the Founding Emperor of Han, and Prime Miister Zhuga, and General Zhang Fei, etc. I walked through Longdong back, Teinshoun tower, little Eermay, Jianmen tower and Yubo temple, Boma tower and Bantong tomb, and arrived at the Wenchang temple in Zitong county, Sechuan province. I visited seven arches mountain, nine arches river, Jianmen tower which had very sharp cliffs. It looked like one brave man guarded the tower, and thousands of usual people could not go through. I took a long journey through mountains myself, and felt calm and peaceful in my mind.

(民國 32 年)

二月一日貴陽黔明寺開示



虛雲這次奉政府首長。即諸位大居士邀請。赴渝主持護國息災大悲法會。路過此地。因時間所限。不能到各常住去拜訪問訊。諸請原諒。現在因修理汽車機件。來與各位談談。各位都是老參上座。對於佛法已有相當研究。用不著我來饒舌。可是你們一定要我來說。又不得不說幾句。現在世界相爭相殺。人民生活。同再水深火熱之中。所謂「民不聊生。」此地幸有廣妙和尚弘揚佛法。普渡眾生。虛雲此次得與各位相會一堂。因緣非偶。但虛雲不過比各位空長幾歲。其他自問無足取。民國創立。信教自由。政府本著國父遺像。迭經明令頒布。試觀異教如天主耶穌回教均在政府保護下。何以我國遍處毀廟逐僧的事。有冤無處訴。此點大家想想。他門毀廟逐僧。固然不對。但物必自腐而後蟲生。現在佛門弟子。多將自己責任放棄。不知道既為佛子。當行佛事。佛事者何。及戒定慧。是佛子必須條件。若能認真修持。自然會感化這班惡魔。轉為佛門護法。現在是和尚犯法。累到諸佛遭殃。霸廟宇。逐僧徒。他們不知道和尚不好。與廟宇何干。如黨員不拆毀黨部。此種道理。我們希望眾人明白。我們大家總要各出一隻手。扶起破砂盆。不要說貴州人顧貴州佛法。須知佛教是整個的。人不分冤親。地不分疆界。方位真正大同主義。還要知道自己生死大事。更為要緊。從聞思修。入三摩地。各人自己前進。切勿空過此生罷。

The Instructions in the Guiyang Chan Min Monastery on the 1st of February in 1943

Governor of Sishan Province invited Hsu Yun to preside the compassionate assembly of protecting country and preventing disasters. Due to very limited time, I can not visit monasteries one by one. Please forgive me! Since I passed by this area, I visited your monastery. You all have a lot of knowledge about Buddhism, but you still want me to speak. I have no choice but to instruct. Nowadays, there are many wars, fights, disasters, etc, and people live in the danger, so called “people hard to survive.” Fortunately, you have Master Guangmio to propagate Buddhism here, who help you to get over difficulties, and transform into bliss land. Hsu Yun are happy to meet with you all. I have no knowledge, but a little older than you. We all have the freedom of religion, since Dr. Sun Yat-Sen established the Republic of China in 1911. Why Catholic and Christian are under the protection of the federal government, but there are many Buddhist temples destroyed and many monks were forced to leave. We have nowhere to appeal grievances. This is something that we have to think about. Although people destructed temples are wrong behaved, but we have to retrospect ourselves. Currently, most Buddhist disciples give up their principles, obligations and responsibilities. A Buddhist must cultivate three conducts: holding precepts, producing calmness, developing wisdom. If all the Buddhists cultivate in a true way, it will reveal true conducts which will provide people good images and influence the group of demos. Then they won't destroy Buddhist temples, and force monks out. For instance, federal members do not demolish the party headquarters. This is the same reason. You all Buddhists should work hard together to cultivate well, and then to renovate and construct monasteries from propped sand and broken pots in the world, no matter in which places or in which races. Eventually, it could reach world peace.

**In Commemoration of the 20th
Anniversary of the Nirvana of
Venerable Master Hsuan Hua**

上宣下化老和尚
涅槃二十周年紀念

南無釋迦牟尼佛
南無虛雲老和尚

萬德莊嚴演正法
眾生無盡願無盡

南無六祖惠大師
南無宣公化上人

心無所住傳衣鉢
慈悲普渡正法藏

*Namo Buddha Shakyamuni; he propagated the proper dharma with great virtues.
Namo 6th Patriarch Hui Nan; he inherited the mantle with an un-attached mind.
Namo Ven. Master Hsu Yun; he prospered the Way greatly with endless wishes for humans.
Namo Ven. Master Hsuan Hua; he was the successor of the proper dharma and saved
humans with great compassions.*



虛雲禪師表信偈 Verse in Expression of faith from Dhyana Master Hsu Yun

宣為妙義振家聲 化承靈嶽法道隆 度以四六傳心印 輪旋無休濟苦輪

**Proclaiming [Hsuan] Wei's wonderful meaning to promote Shakyamuni's Buddhism.
Buddhism Transformations [Hua] inherited from Ling Peak to exalt the Dharma Path.
Taking across [Du] four minds and six prajna paramitas to transmit the mind seal.
The wheel [Lun] revolving unceasingly to rescue the suffering hordes.**

親珍敬拜

2015年6月7日是上宣下化老和尚(1918-1995)涅槃二十周年紀念日。1995年6月7日宣公上人涅槃，一代大師殞陌，山海哭泣，天人同悲。時光飛逝，一轉眼已二十寒暑。弟子乃一死凡夫，輾轉於世俗名利之中，業障深重；今逢紀念上宣下化老和尚涅槃二十周年，於此略述：1. 1993年巧遇宣公上人的因緣，2. 2009年受在家菩薩戒的殊勝，3. 恪守遵循宣公上人教誨，以表追思懷念於萬一。若有疏漏與錯誤，敬請諸位法師們與同修們賜教與指正。

7 June 2015 was the 20th Anniversary of the Nirvana of Venerable Master Hsuan Hua (1918-1995). On 7 June 1995, Venerable Master Hsuan Hua passed away, tens of thousands of people sadly mourned the loss of this great exceptional and outstanding 46th Patriarch of Buddhism. Time flies easily, and twenty years have been passed. I am an ordinary human without resolving life and death, pursue wealth and benefits in daily life, and have accumulated a lot of sins. To commemorate the 20th Anniversary of the Nirvana of Venerable Master Hsuan Hua, I would like to assert the following: 1) meeting with Ven. Master Hsuan Hua in 1993, 2) benefits of taking Lay Bodhisattvas Precepts, and 3) obeying Venerable Master Hsuan's instructions.

1. 1993年巧遇宣公上人的因緣

1. Meeting with Ven. Master Hsuan in 1993

我於1980年初聞佛法，後赴美留學，斷斷續續。1988年宣公上人率領僧從美國加州萬佛城赴台灣主持護國息災觀音法會，我因此得知上人。1989年我的先父往生，我痛不欲生再加上事與願違，諸多不順，身心縈苦，罪障深重。我深感「世間無常，國土危脆；生滅變異，五陰無我。」1992年秋我初訪華嚴精舍遇恆貢法師，他教我唸「觀世音菩薩普門品」。1993年5月我赴加州萬佛城拜「萬佛寶懺」，想藉此謁見上人，可惜他因病未能出席，我法願未成。上人曾說：「萬佛城怎麼來的？萬佛城就是從我們苦幹來的、修行來的。我們修行不能自讚毀他，說我們修行是對了。但是我們有多少是真誠的，諸佛菩薩就有多少的大感應！」當時宣公上人仍然駐世，在「觀音正殿」恆實法師與恆持法師分別領男女大眾唱誦經咒，我深感萬佛城佛法氣息特別強勝，在此渡過第一個浴佛節。

I first heard Buddhism on and off in the early 1980s, and then came to U. S. A. to study as a graduate student. In 1988, Ven. Master Hsuan led a delegation to Taiwan to preside over the Ceremony of Reciting Guan Yin's Name to Protect the Country and Quell Disasters. Therefore, I knew his name ever since. When my loving father passed away in 1989, I was very upset for a long period of time. Moreover, many misfortunes happened to me such that my mind and body were in pain. I felt "The world is changeable, the earth is fragile; life and death are reincarnated; five skandhas are without me." Hence, I started to go to Avatamsaka Vihara in Maryland to attend the Sunday worship in Fall 1992, and met Master Heng Gong. He told me to recite "Guan Yin Pumen Ping," and advised me to participate the Repentance Assembly of Bowing Ten Thousands of Buddhas at the City in May 1993. Then I went to the assembly at the City, and hoped to meet Ven. Master Hsuan there. Unfortunately, he did not show up due to his illness. Master Hsuan ever said, "The City of Ten Thousands of Buddhas was built upon our faith and cultivation. The more sincerity we show, the more Bodhisattvas would take care us." Since Ven. Master Hsuan was still alive, Masters Heng Sure and Heng Chi led lay men and lay women to recite all sutras in the Guan Yin Hall. I felt the dharma atmosphere was very strong in the city, and I experienced the 1st festival of Bath Buddha there.

1993 年 11 月，宣公上人蒞臨馬利蘭州弘法，我攜母親在華嚴精舍見到了久仰的上人。第一天午齋由於葉伯伯(2012 年往生享年 90)一流精湛的廚藝，上人胃口大開連吃了兩大盤，午齋後我問端盤服伺上人的師姐可否請教問題，上人和藹可親微笑的說「可以可以」。他第一句話便問：「爸爸呢？」我答：「往生了。」上人說：「靠近我身體一點，如何往生的？」我當時以為他年老體邁聽力欠佳，於是靠近他身邊嘴對著他耳朵答：「直腸癌。」上人嘆了一口氣的說：「唉！他肉吃太多。」(上人具五眼六通，可能以其佛眼把我過去現在未來一眼看穿。上人比先父年長三歲，同時出生國難當頭，對日抗戰與國共內戰，先父大學畢業後投筆從戎(空軍)報効國家。先父 18 歲在廣東上大學新生訓練作一首詩以明志「篤行中正志何堅，懷抱公平氣度軒，博愛濟群矢奮勇，終期登賞大同山。」先父從小教導我們兄弟姊妹，背誦孝經、四書、古文觀止...等及祭拜孔聖；做人一定要厚道，寧可吃虧，絕不佔便宜，而且要「積德行善」，與上人教導我們的完全一樣。)上人與吾母相視而笑說：「媽媽挺有福氣的。」吾母頻頻稱讚「宣公上人法相莊嚴」。2007 年吾母往生，舍弟經由台北法界將她牌位置於萬佛城往生堂。上人問「有什麼問題？」我答「失眠。」上人說「妄想太多，不要打妄想。」上人接著問我有沒 P. R. (綠卡)？在那裡做事？幾個兄弟姊妹？... 等，我們談了一些私事。最後上人叮嚀我「到萬佛城來住」，我向上人頂禮三拜，他慈祥和藹的面容，永遠的刻畫在我內心深處。現在回想起來上人是觀世音菩薩的化身(正法明如來)「大慈大悲救苦救難的佛菩薩」。自從遇到上人以後，我的罪障漸消，經常讀誦「地藏經」。我於 1997 年 6 月在華嚴精舍皈依佛法僧三寶於宣化上人所屬僧團，法名親珍，正式研讀佛經，學習佛法。謹此我特別向恆猷法師與恆哲法師在華嚴精舍多年來的關照與愛護致崇高的敬意與謝意。我於 2000 年在維吉尼亞州成立海鴻基金會(非營利組織) <http://haihungfound.org> 紀念先父海鴻教授(電機工程)，其目標：(1) 維吉尼亞州與廣東省(包括台灣)大學清寒獎學金；(2) 出版「漢之聲」。

In November 1993, Ven. Master Hsuan came to propagate dharma of Buddhism in Maryland, I met him at Avatamsaka Vihara with my mother. At the lunch of the 1st day, due to Uncle Yeh's (he passed away in 2012 with age 90) great and fantastic cooking skill, Ven. Master Hsuan ate two big plates. After the lunch, I asked the lady assisting him whether I could ask him questions or not. He was very friendly and amicable to answer with a smile: "Certainly!" He first asked, "Where is your father?" I replied, "He passed away." He then asked, "How? Please stand closer to me." I thought he was old and his hearing might be no good, and so I said every word toward his ear. I answered, "He passed away with column cancer." He said with a sigh, "He ate too much meat." (He had five great Buddhist eyes and six superstitious minds, and I guessed he observed me through my past, current, and future life with his Buddhist eyes. Ven. Master Hsuan was three years older than my father, and both of them grew up in China's turmoil with Japanese invasion and Kou-Ming Party and Communist Party civil war. When my father was 18 and during his orientation at a university in Guangzhou, he wrote a verse as follows: "How strong my mind is to hold honesty and sincerity; how high my heart is to uphold fairness and judiciary. Work diligently to benefit all people; hope to achieve world peace eventually." The way our father taught us exactly the same as Ven. Master taught us as follows: recite filial sutra, four books, and the collection book of ancient Chinese literatures, and worship Confucius. Never take advantage of people. Show good virtues and do good things for people.) Ven. Master Hsuan and my mother watched each other with smile, and he said, "Your mother has good luck." In 2007, my mother passed away and my brother took her ashes to the City of Ten Thousand of Buddhists. He then asked, "What is your question?" I replied, "I have insomnia." He said, "You make too many illusions. No illusion." He then asked: where do you work? do you have US permanent

residence? how many brothers and sisters in your family? etc., we talked about some personal business. He finally advised me, “Come to stay at the Sagely City of Ten Thousand of Buddhists in California.” At the end of our conversation, I bowed to salute him three times. His kindness and compassion were engraved in my mind forever. After I met him, my sins have been gradually diminished, and I have recited Earth Storage Sutra more frequently. In June, 1997, I took refuge with the Triple Jewel - the Buddha, the Dharma, and the Sangha from Dharma Masters of the Sangha, who follow Ven. Master Hsuan, to be my transmission masters. I was given the dharma name Chin Jen and started to recite Buddhist sutra, and study dharma. I would like to pay special appreciations and respects to Master Heng Yio and Master Heng Je for their kindness and cares to me for many years. In 2000, Hai Hung Foundation <http://haihungfound.org> was a non-profit organization established by me in memory of my late father Professor Hai Hung (in Electrical Engineering) in VA. Two objectives of the foundation are: (1) to award scholarships for university/college students in Virginia and Guangdong (including Taiwan) in financial need; (2) to publish “The Voice of Han” (bilingual, English and Chinese).

2. 2009 年受在家菩薩戒深感殊勝 2. Benefits of taking the Lay Bodhisattva Precepts

2009 年 7 月在我受家菩薩戒前舍弟特別從台灣寄「梵網經菩薩戒本」給我，在乘坐飛機路上我讀誦它 1-2 遍。在萬佛城受菩薩戒及慶祝萬佛城 30 周年紀念我共待了 10 天。大嫂痲瘋症，我飛到聖荷西探訪她再由大哥開車 3 個多小時送我到萬佛城，不巧車子故障耽誤一天課程，我一踏進萬佛城，傷感的淚流滿面。受菩薩戒 10 天以來，我一片誠心，每天 3:20 早起，4-5 點早課，5-6 點禮拜「南無釋迦牟尼佛」，6-6:30 在觀音殿打坐，6:30 步行並頌「楞嚴咒」至「五觀大齋堂」早齋，7-11 點上菩薩戒課，11-12 點午齋，12-1 點幫忙洗碗掃地，下午 1-5 點上菩薩戒課，6:00 點晚課，7:00-9:30 在「觀音殿」聆聽法師們開示，每日守八關齋戒過午不食。第 7 天正式受在家菩薩戒，早上恆律法師教導我們下午受戒的事宜及發願，12-1 點休息時間我在樹下練習。下午 1: 00 正式受菩薩戒，典禮莊嚴隆重，恆實法師、恆律法師等四位比丘領眾，恆實法師在典禮一開始說：「恭喜!恭喜!每位居士排除萬難，今天正式接受在家菩薩戒，要有善根的人，才有善緣受此菩薩戒。」我們這期約 200 居士們受菩薩戒，我很喜歡菩薩戒本，聚精會神跟著恆實法師領導我們唱誦，我掉了不少眼淚，消了不少罪障。多年來我因身心欠佳，再加上工作繁忙，我是在逆境中勉強修行，對此次受菩薩戒倍感珍惜。

Before I took 2009 Transmission of the Lay Bodhisattva Precepts at the Sagely City of Ten Thousand of Buddhas, my bother sent me “Fanwang Bodhisattva Precepts Sutra.” I recited 1-2 times when I traveled in the airplane. I stayed ten days at the city with sincerity and diligence. I woke up at 3:20 am every morning, did morning recitation at 4-5 am, bowed “**Namo Buddha Shakyamuni**” at 5-6 am, meditated at 6-6:30 am, at 6:30am walked and recited the *Shurangama Sutra* to the dining hall for a breakfast, 7-11 am, attended morning class for precepts, 11-12 for lunch, 12-1, washed dishes and cleaned in the dining hall, 1-5 pm, attended afternoon class for precepts, 6-7 pm, evening recitation, 7-9:30 pm listened masters’ instructions, 10:30 went to bed. On the 7th day, the opening ceremony of the Transmission of the Lay Bodhisattva Precepts took place greatly in Guan Yin Hall at 1 pm. Masters Heng Sure, Heng Lu and the other two, four total, led us about 200 lay people to accept the transmission. In the beginning, Master Heng Sure said, “Congratulations! Each of you overcomes the difficulty to accept the transmission of Lay Bodhisattva Precepts today. Only a person with good virtues has this nice opportunity to accept

this great transmission.” I liked the Bodhisattva Precepts book very much and focused on following Master Heng Sure’s recitation. My mind was touched and my eyes turned into tears which washed away my sins. About two decades, my mind and body are not in good condition plus my work is busy and heavy, I cultivated myself in an un-smooth situation. Hence, I cherish this opportunity to accept the transmission very much.

星期日慶祝萬佛城 30 周年紀念，人山人海(約三、四千人)，熱鬧非凡。我仍然早上誦楞嚴咒下午誦大悲咒。下午為先母受幽冥戒時既累又暈，收據在宿舍有號碼對先母牌位，但我已經累暈的走不回去，上千排位正困惑如何找，護法加持先母排位立即現在眼前。離開萬佛城的最後一天，同行每位居士都訂了晚餐飯盒，我不好意思也訂了(但內心想守八關齋戒)，說也奇怪我的晚餐飯盒竟然忘了擱置在到舊金山的汽車上，我當時很高興正好滿守八關齋戒的心願。到機場晚上約 8 點，我的飛機是隔天早上 6 點多，我把「在家菩薩戒本」拿出來複習並誦大悲咒到 11 點，一閉眼休息沒想到竟然睡著到早上 5 點多，心裡很愉快。回到家裡約兩個月時間，感覺內心非常殊勝身體健康精神愉快，利用這段時間完成寫作數學研究書籍「從調和映射波型映射楊密爾向量場到二調和映射二波型映射二楊密爾向量場的進展」(介紹 21 頁加正文 399 頁共 420 頁, 2008 年 9 月 1 日開始撰寫)最新與最難的部分，在諸佛菩薩的加持下，此書籍於 2013 年 7 月在歐洲的史普雲葛科學出版公司的「數學先鋒」系列順利出版。

We celebrated the 30th anniversary of the City of Ten Thousand of Buddhas on Sunday. There were about 3000-4000 people showing up and it was crowded at the City. I still recited The *Shurangama Sutra* in the morning and the *Great Compassion Sutra* in the afternoon. When I accepted the transmission of precepts (for the deceased people) for my mother, I felt very tired and sleepy and hardly walked into my dormitory to get the number for my mother’s plague. There were about 1000, I was puzzled at that moment, but the angles helped me and my mother’s plague appeared in front of me immediately. On the leaving day, everybody in my team ordered a dinner box, I was reluctant to order it since I wanted to uphold the eight precepts (no meal after noon). It was strange, when I took a shuttle from the city to San Francisco, I forgot my dinner box in the shuttle and was happy that I could uphold the eight precepts. I arrived at the airport about 8 pm, but my airplane took off next morning around 6 am. I reviewed the Lay Bodhisattva Precepts book and recited the *Great Compassion Sutra* till 11 pm. I took a rest and fell to sleep till 5 am next morning and I was very happy. When I returned home, my mind was calm and peaceful, and my body was healthy about two months. I utilized this grace period to finish the most difficult and the newest part of my book in mathematics. Under the blessings of Bodhisattvas, my research book titled, “Developments of Harmonic Maps, Wave Maps and Yang-Mills Fields into Biharmonic Maps, Biwave Maps and Bi-Yang-Mills Fields” was published by Birkhäuser, Springer, Basel (in Europe) in the series of “Frontiers in Mathematics,” xxi+399 pages, July, 2013, <http://springer.com/birkhauser/mathematics/book/978-3-0348-0533-9>

3. 恪守遵循宣公上人教悔

3. Obey Venerable Master Hsuan’s instructions

加州萬佛聖城門對聯 - 宣公上人作

華嚴法會楞嚴壇場四十二手眼安天立地

妙覺世尊等覺菩薩千百億化身變海為山

慈悲普渡信者得救發菩提心勇猛精進成正覺
喜捨同修禮之獲福立堅固願忍辱禪定悟真詮

The verses on the doors of the front gates of the Sagely City of Ten Thousand of Buddhas
By Ven. Master Hsuan Hua

**The Flower Adornment Dharma Assembly, the Shurangama Platform,
and the Forty-two Hands and Eyes establish the Heavens and the Earth;
The World Honored Ones of Wonderful Enlightenment and the Bodhisattvas of Equal
Enlightenment, with a billion transformation bodies, can turn oceans into mountains.**

**With kindness and compassion, cross over all. Those who believe will be saved. Bring forth
the Bodhi mind and advance with courage and vigor to perfect the Right Enlightenment;
With joy and compassion, cultivate together. Those who worship will obtain blessings.
Make firm vows and practice patience and Dhyana-concentration to awaken to the true
teaching.**

皈依宣公上人所屬僧團以後，我讀了《宣化老和尚追思紀念專集》第一冊與第二冊，對他一辈子的偉大生平事大致瞭解。我要永遠跟隨上人追本溯源，把上人所作萬佛聖城門對聯背誦及恪守遵循。我很喜歡上人所作的《大悲心陀羅尼經淺譯》，其中提詳細解釋四十二手眼，及每天下午背誦大悲咒若干遍。上人一生講經說法無數導致涅槃解時十幾顆牙齒長了舍利子，真是稀世罕見難能可貴，他苦口婆心講解《楞嚴經》九遍，他說：「《楞嚴經》和〈楞嚴咒〉，這是正法最要緊的一部經和一部咒，《楞嚴經》就是為〈楞嚴咒〉而說的，這《楞嚴經》就是解釋〈楞嚴咒〉的一部經。《楞嚴經》和〈楞嚴咒〉的重要性是沒有法子能說得完的，盡未來際也說不完它的這種功德和妙用，所以是不可思議。」上人曾作偈頌：

究竟堅固定中王 直心修學至道場 身口意業須清淨 貪瞋癡念要掃光
誠則感應獲現證 專能成究大神通 有德遇斯靈妙句 時刻沒忘紹隆昌

上人又說：「在佛教裏頭，〈楞嚴咒〉是最重要的一部咒，是咒中的王，也是咒裏邊最長的一個咒，這個咒關係整個佛教的興衰。〈楞嚴咒〉是支持天地沒有毀滅的靈文，〈楞嚴咒〉是支持世界不到末日的靈文。所以我常說，世界上若有一人會念〈楞嚴咒〉，這世界就不會毀滅，佛法也不會毀滅的。等到世上沒有人會念〈楞嚴咒〉時，這世界就快毀滅了，因為正法不存在了。」上人還說「你若能受持〈楞嚴咒〉，將來一定是成佛的，一定得到無上正等正覺的。你若常常誦念〈楞嚴咒〉，就能消除你宿世的業障，往昔的罪業都可以消除。這是〈楞嚴咒〉的妙用。」我每天早晨背誦〈楞嚴咒〉幾遍，而且研讀《楞嚴經》，不瞭解時閱讀上人的《大埤頂首楞嚴經淺釋》非常精彩。《楞嚴經》與〈楞嚴咒〉是學習佛法與修行的基礎，根基堅固，無論修持任何法門都容易上路。

Ven. Master Hsuan said, "The *Shurangama Sutra* and the *Shurangama Mantra* are the most important among all proper dharma. The *Shurangama Sutra* was spoken for the sake of the

Shurangama Mantra. There's no way to ever finish expressing the importance of the *Shurangama Sutra* and the Shurangama Mantra; to the ends of all time their merits, virtues, and wonderful functions could never be told--so absolutely inconceivable and ineffable are they! When all is said and done, the *Shurangama Sutra* is an ode to the Shurangama Mantra. As long as there is even one person who can recite the Shurangama Mantra, the demons, ghosts, and strange entities don't dare show themselves in this world. They fear the mantra. But when not even one person can recite the Shurangama Mantra by heart, then those weird entities, those demons and ghosts will come out of hiding. Depraved and up to no good, they will not be recognized by most people. At this point in time, since there are still those who can recite the mantra from memory, those malevolent beings haven't made their appearance yet. And so, if you want to keep the world from being destroyed, quickly learn the Shurangama Mantra and read the *Shurangama Sutra* to keep the Proper Dharma in the world." He also said, "Among the Buddha's teachings, the Shurangama Mantra is considered to be the king of mantras because it is the longest and most important. The flourish or demise of Buddhism rests entirely with the Shurangama Mantra. It is the efficacious phrases of the Shurangama Mantra that keep heaven and earth from being destroyed. It is the efficacious phrases of the Shurangama Mantra that keep the world from coming to an end. That is why I often tell you that as long as a single person can recite the Shurangama Mantra, the world cannot be destroyed, nor can Buddhism. But when there is no longer anyone who can recite the Shurangama Mantra, then very quickly the world will be destroyed, because the Proper Dharma no longer abides."

待我《楞嚴經》與〈楞嚴咒〉讀熟了研究透徹了，下一步研究《大方廣佛華嚴經》共 81 卷，多年來在華嚴精舍零散的讀誦過一些，自己從同頭開始讀至第卷 40。在《楞嚴經》裡簡單的介紹一地至十地，當讀誦到《華嚴經》敘述一地至十地講解的非常詳細透徹，我的歡喜與滿足的心情難以形容。上人說：「這部《華嚴經》，也就是法界經，也就是虛空經。盡虛空、遍法界，沒有一個地方不是《華嚴經》的所在處。《華嚴經》的所在處，就是佛的所在處，也就是法的所在處，也就是賢聖僧的所在處。所以在佛開始成正覺的時候，就說這部《華嚴經》，教化所有的法身大士。」上人又說：「《華嚴經》也就等於虛空裏邊的祥雲，遍照三千大千世界，如甘露般的法雨，潤澤一切一切的眾生；《華嚴經》也等於太陽，普照大千世界，令一切眾生都得到溫暖；《華嚴經》也就等於大地，能生長一切萬物。所以有《華嚴經》存在，可以說是「正法久住」的時候。」上人還說：「《華嚴經》從一開始到最後，每一句經文，都是無上法寶。我們若能躬行實踐，依照經的義理去修行，一定會成佛的。所以《華嚴經》也可以說是諸佛的母親，《華嚴經》就是諸佛的法身。佛讚歎《金剛經》：「若是經典所在之處，即為有佛。」這部《華嚴經》所在之處，即為是佛——就是佛在這裏。我們要「勤修戒定慧，息滅貪瞋癡」，一舉一動，都要迴光返照，這樣的修行，才會有進步。無論什麼法，都沒有超出我們每個人的自性；我們的自性，也是盡虛空、遍法界。所以，你若能把你的心量放大，你就和《華嚴經》合而為一，所謂「二而不二」。人人都能依《華嚴經》的境界，做為自己的境界，來收攝為自己的智慧。你看！這有多麼的廣大！所謂「致廣大而盡精微」，「放之則彌六合，卷之則退藏於密」，真是妙不可言！」

After I have understood the *Shurangama Sutra* and the *Shurangama Mantra*, I will study the *Flower Adornment Sutra* which contains 81 volumes. At the Avatamsaka Vihara, I studied the *Flower Adornment Sutra* loosely and discontinuous with masters. I personally read from Volume 1 up to Volume 40. When I read all the details of ten cultivated levels of Buddhism in the *Flower Adornment Sutra*, I was very pleased and satisfied since I studied those in the *Shurangama Sutra*

with briefs. Ven. Master Hsuan said, “The *Flower Adornment Sutra* is the 'King of Kings' of all Buddhist sutras because of its profundity and great length. This sutra contains the most complete explanation of the Buddha's state of realization and the Bodhisattva's quest for awakening. It is said: “Unless you read the Avatamsaka Sutra, you will not know of the Buddha's true blessings and honor. The Avatamsaka Sutra is the Buddha's greatest store of treasures.” In forty chapters the sutra conveys a vast range of Buddhist teachings. It presents, in detailed description, the stages of awakening that a Bodhisattva or 'Awakened Being' must progress through on the path towards Anuttara Samyak Sambodhi – ‘Supreme Perfect Enlightenment.’ The sutra depicts the events that immediately unfolded upon the Buddha's Awakening under the Bodhi tree. It describes a cosmos that has infinite realms within realms, boundless and interpenetrating. One chapter describes the Ten Spiritual Powers that Bodhisattvas attain upon perfecting their meritorious virtues in the practice of the Bodhisattva Path. These powers enable Bodhisattvas to discern the potentials of living beings to teach and guide them to bring forth the aspiration for enlightenment. Another chapter describes the Ten Patiences that Bodhisattvas must develop in their quest towards ultimate Awakening. If Bodhisattvas can perfect these ten kinds of patience, they will attain the positions of unobstructed patience of all Bodhisattvas.

宣公上人十八大願

上人披緇結廬，守孝到同年夏天六月十九日，當天他在佛前發下大願「稽首十方佛，及與三藏法，過去現在賢聖僧。惟願垂作證，弟子度輪，釋安慈；我今發心，不為自求人天福報，聲聞緣覺，乃至權乘諸位菩薩；唯依最上乘，發菩提心，願與法界眾生，一時同得阿耨多羅三藐三菩提：

- (一) 願盡虛空，遍法界，十方三世一切菩薩等，若有一未成佛時，我誓不取正覺。
- (二) 願盡虛空，遍法界，十方三世一切緣覺等，若有一未成佛時，我誓不取正覺。
- (三) 願盡虛空，遍法界，十方三世一切聲聞等，若有一未成佛時，我誓不取正覺。
- (四) 願三界諸天人等，若有一未成佛時，我誓不取正覺。
- (五) 願十方世界，一切人等，若有一未成佛時，我誓不取正覺。
- (六) 願天、人、一切阿修羅等，若有一未成佛時，我誓不取正覺。
- (七) 願一切畜生界等，若有一未成佛時，我誓不取正覺。
- (八) 願一切餓鬼界等，若有一未成佛時，我誓不取正覺。
- (九) 願一切地獄界等，若有一未成佛時，我誓不取正覺。
- (十) 願凡時三界諸天、仙、人、阿修羅、飛潛動植、靈界龍畜、鬼神等眾，曾經皈依我者，若有一未成佛時，我誓不取正覺。
- (十一) 願將我所應享受一切福樂，悉皆迴向，普施法界眾生。
- (十二) 願將法界眾生，所有一切苦難，悉皆與我，一人代受。
- (十三) 願分靈無數，普入一切不信佛法眾生心；令其改惡向善，悔過自新，皈依三寶，究竟成佛。
- (十四) 願一切眾生，見我面，乃至聞我名，悉發菩提心，速得成佛道。
- (十五) 願恪遵佛制，實行日中一食。
- (十六) 願覺諸有情，普攝群機。

(十七) 願此生即得，五眼六通，飛行自在。

(十八) 願一切求願，必獲滿足。

Venerable Master Hsuan Hua's Eighteen Great Wills

- (1) Wish all Bodhisattvas in ten directions and three times (past, present and future) throughout the space and the dhara realm among all Bodhisattvas in ten directions and three times (past, present and future), if one does not become a Buddha, I vow not to take an enl all Pratyeka in ten directions and three times ightenment.
- (2) Wish all Pratyeka throughout the space and the dhara realm in ten directions and three times, if one does not become a Buddha, I vow not to take an enlightenment.
- (3) Wish all Savaka Throughout the space and the dhara realm in ten directions and three times throughout the space and the dhara realm, if one does not become a Buddha, I vow not to take an enlightenment.
- (4) Wish all humans in three realms of heaven, if one does not become a Buddha, I vow not to take an enlightenment.
- (5) Wish all people in the world in ten directions, if does not become a Buddha, I vow to take an enlightenment.
- (6) Wish all heaven humans, people, ashura, etc., if one does not become a Buddha, I vow not to take an enlightenment.
- (7) Wish all animals, if one does not become a Buddha, I vow not to take an enlightenment.
- (8) Wish all hungry ghosts, if one does not become a Buddha, I vow not to take an enlightenment.
- (9) Wish all sinners in the hell, if one does not become a Buddha, I vow not to take an enlightenment.
- (10)Wish all heaven humans, people, Asura, flying creeping plant, animal dragon spirit world, ghosts, who took refuge with me, if one does not become a Buddha, I vow not to take an enlightenment.
- (11)Wish all my happiness and prosperity transferred to all dharma beings.
- (12) Wish all sufferings and miseries of all dhara beings in place of myself.
- (13) Wish uncountable spirits into the hearts of all unbelievable beings, make change evils into good deeds, repent and take triplet jewel a repent and take refuge with the triple jewel, and become Buddhas eventually.
- (14) May all beings see my face, and hear my name, learn proper dharma, and go to the Buddha Way.
- (15) Wish to obey Buddhist rule, one meal a way.
- (16) Wish all dharma beings, corporate and implement the Way to all beings.
- (17) Wish this life to obtain five great Buddhist eyes and six superstitious minds.
- (18) Wish all requests and wishes all fulfilled.

Reference: <http://drba.org>

THE SCHOLARSHIPS OF HAI HUNG FOUNDATION

In each summer, the Board of Directors (formed by three directors) and the Committee (formed by four PhDs) evaluate all the applications based on four criteria: statements of academic goals and objectives, transcripts, financial statements, references, and decide the recipients and awards. We have awarded scholarships to 193 university/college students in financial need in Virginia, USA and Guandong, China, (including Taiwan) since 2000. The recipients in Fredericksburg, Virginia are:

1. 2001: Mohamed Chakhad, Jennifer E. Hendrick, Dawn Zbell, Joshua Hickland, Robert M. Worster III, Jessica Pellegnno, Christopher J. Barkley.
2. 2002: Erik C. Johnston, Evangeline W. Cornwell, Mary B. Ramsey, Matthew D. Welz, James F. Pierce, Jaime A. Miller.
3. 2003: Robyn L. Fielder, Kristen R. Payne, Jason B. Echols, Lindsay N. Briggs, Jennifer Golladay, Elizabeth M. Griffiths.
4. 2004: Damian Watson, Robyn L. Fielder, Kristen R. Payne, Pamela Medley, Cara A. Campbell, Daniel Bowers.
5. 2005: Graham Richardson, Mahvash Mujahid, Kathryn Astley, Gina Marie Vitale, Emily Lovins, Adele Chapin, Laura Titus.
6. 2006: Karena Jordan Carlson, Mahvash Mujahid, Gustavo Ramallo, Erin Leach-Kemon, Erin P. Keegan, Jay Sinha, Karin Anne Curtis.
7. 2007: Amanda Macdonald, Morgan Jones, Jonathan Stallings, Laura Mandeville, Lindsay D'Adamo, Melisa A. Shepherd, Gustavo Ramallo.
8. 2008: Jonathan Stallings, Lindsay D'Adamo, Fiona Cobb, Jillian Brodie, Caitlin Poteet, Stephine Rzepka, Sarah Jane Marshall.
9. 2009: Amy Sams, Carolyn Hanoach, Rachel Covington, Virginia Osella, Justin Anderson, Farrah Tek, Mirey Elias.
10. 2010: Amy Smetana, Kyle McCartt, Rachel Grosmann, Diana Weigel, Anum Shaikh, Mattew Baker, Mairin Martin.
11. 2011: Rachel Eiker, Amy Smetana, Kathryn Dillinger, Natalie Fraize, Hoa Le Truong, Mairin Martin, Brittany Byrd.
12. 2012: Kritsti Scruggs, Morgan Hayes, Rachel Martin, Annelise Wilsher, Brittany Byrd, Holly Wilsey, Rachel Baily.
13. 2013: Emma Leheney, Kelly Griffith, Ellynn H. Loftus, Brittany Simmons, Rachel Bailey, Brittany Byrd, Shirley Naa-Kowaa Martey
14. 2014: Haley A. Kane, Anna Lobova, Gemma Cohen, Kathleen MacIndoe, Kimberly Slater, Emily Hill, Courtney Brittingham.

Hai Hung Foundation is a non-profit organization. Your donation is tax-deductable. If one donates \$10(\$20), one will receive a volume of *The Voice of Han* (a hard copy or a CD) for 1 (2) year. Enclosed is

() \$10 USD () \$20 USD () other \$ _____ USD

Please send check to: **Hai Hung Foundation, P. O. Box 3864, Fredericksburg, VA 22402, USA**

Name: (English) _____ (Chinese) _____

Telephone: _____ E-mail: _____

Address: _____

Please pass *The Voice of Han* around. Thanks! 敬請流傳「漢之聲」,謝謝!



APEC 2014 in Beijing, China

2014 年北京亞太經合峰會

**Hai Hung Foundation
P. O. Box 3864
Fredericksburg, VA 22402
U. S. A.**

Postage

To:



Chinese President Xi Jinping with the leaders of other countries at the 4th CICA in Shanghai on May 21, 2014
2014年5月21日中国国家主席习近平(中)和出席亚信上海峰会的其他国家领导人在开幕式前合影留念



South Korean President Park Geun-hye (in green jacket) with seven prestigious prize recipients and organizers at 2014 International Congress of Mathematicians (every 4 years) in Seoul, August 13-21.
南韓總統朴瑾惠與七名最高數學得獎者與會長于2014年國際數學家學會于南韓漢城(8月13-21日)